

NATIONAL HEALTH INTERVIEW SURVEY, 1994

(ICPSR 6724)

Principal Investigator

United States Department of Health and Human Services
National Center for Health Statistics

First ICPSR Version
August 1996

Inter-university Consortium for
Political and Social Research
P.O. Box 1248
Ann Arbor, Michigan 48106

BIBLIOGRAPHIC CITATION

Publications based on ICPSR data collections should acknowledge those sources by means of bibliographic citations. To ensure that such source attributions are captured for social science bibliographic utilities, citations must appear in footnotes or in the reference section of publications. The bibliographic citation for this data collection is:

U.S. Dept. of Health and Human Services, National Center for Health Statistics. NATIONAL HEALTH INTERVIEW SURVEY, 1994 [Computer file]. ICPSR version. Hyattsville, MD: U.S. Dept. of Health and Human Services, National Center for Health Statistics [producer], 1995. Ann Arbor, MI: Inter-university Consortium for Political and Social Research [distributor], 1996.

REQUEST FOR INFORMATION ON USE OF ICPSR RESOURCES

To provide funding agencies with essential information about use of archival resources and to facilitate the exchange of information about ICPSR participants' research activities, users of ICPSR data are requested to send to ICPSR bibliographic citations for each completed manuscript or thesis abstract. Please indicate in a cover letter which data were used.

DATA DISCLAIMER

The original collector of the data, ICPSR, and the relevant funding agency bear no responsibility for uses of this collection or for interpretations or inferences based upon such uses.

DATA COLLECTION DESCRIPTION

United States Department of Health and Human Services. National Center for Health Statistics

NATIONAL HEALTH INTERVIEW SURVEY, 1994 (ICPSR 6724)

SUMMARY: The purpose of the National Health Interview Survey (NHIS) is to obtain information about the amount and distribution of illness, its effects in terms of disability and chronic impairments, and the kinds of health services people receive. The Household Record file (Part 1) presents information on type of living quarters, size of family, number of families in the household, whether there is a telephone, number of unrelated individuals, and region. Variables in the Person Record file (Part 2) cover sex, age, race, marital status, Hispanic origin, education, veteran status, family income, family size, major activities, health status, activity limits, employment status, industry, and occupation. These person-level variables are also found in the Condition, Doctor Visit, and Hospital Record files (Parts 3-5). The Person Record file also contains height, weight, bed days, doctor visits, hospital stays, years at residence, and region variables. Data for each reported health condition, with specifics on injury and accident reports, are supplied in the condition file, while the Doctor Visit Record file documents doctor visits within the time period and identifies acute or chronic conditions. The Hospital Record file contains information on conditions, hospital episodes, type of service, type of hospital ownership, date of admission and discharge, number of nights in hospital, and operations performed, within the 12-month period.

UNIVERSE: Civilian, noninstitutionalized population of the 50 states and the District of Columbia.

SAMPLING: The NHIS uses a stratified multistage probability design.

NOTE: (1) Per agreement with NCHS, ICPSR distributes the data file(s) and text of the technical documentation for this collection as prepared by NCHS. (2) The codebook is provided as a Portable Document Format (PDF) file. The PDF file format was developed by Adobe Systems Incorporated and can be accessed using the Adobe Acrobat Reader. Information on how to obtain a copy of the Acrobat Reader is provided through the ICPSR Website on the Internet. The codebook is also available in hardcopy form upon request from ICPSR. (3) The Field Representatives' Manual is available only in hardcopy form upon request from ICPSR.

RESTRICTIONS: In preparing the data file(s) for this collection, the National Center for Health Statistics (NCHS) has removed direct identifiers and characteristics that might lead to identification of data subjects. As an additional precaution NCHS requires, under Section 308(d) of the Public Health Service Act (42 U.S.C. 242m), that data collected by NCHS not be used for any purpose other than statistical analysis and reporting. NCHS further requires that analysts not use the data to learn the identity of any persons or establishments and that the director of NCHS be notified if any identities are inadvertently discovered. ICPSR member institutions and other users ordering data from ICPSR are expected to adhere to these restrictions.

EXTENT OF COLLECTION: 5 data files + machine-readable documentation (PDF)

EXTENT OF PROCESSING: FREQ.PR/ MDATA.PR/ SCAN

DATA FORMAT: Logical Record Length

Part 1: Household Record

File Structure: rectangular

Cases: 48,584

Variables: approx. 50

Record Length: 335

Records Per Case: 1

Part 2: Person Record

File Structure: rectangular

Cases: 116,179

Variables: approx. 106

Record Length: 335

Records Per Case: 1

Part 3: Condition Record

File Structure: rectangular

Cases: 89,199

Variables: approx. 109

Record Length: 335

Records Per Case: 1

Part 4: Doctor Visit Record

File Structure: rectangular

Cases: 27,366

Variables: approx. 104

Record Length: 335

Records Per Case: 1

Part 5: Hospital Record

File Structure: rectangular

Cases: 11,811

Variables: approx. 100

Record Length: 335

Records Per Case: 1

Part 6: Codebook for All Parts

in PDF Format

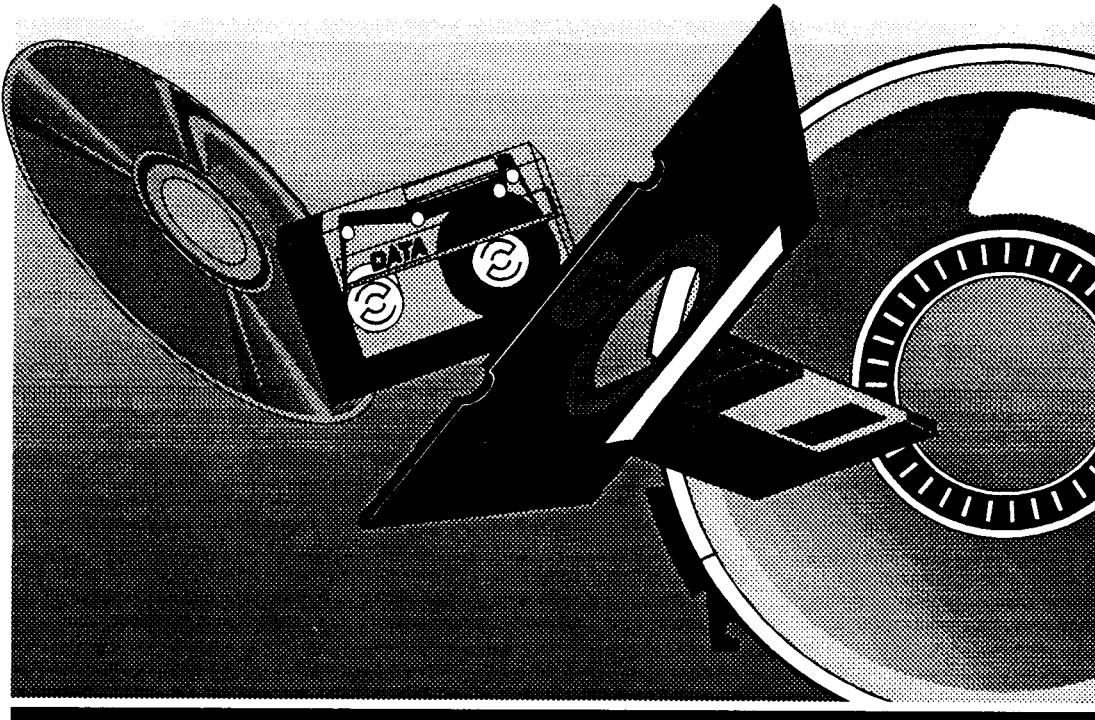
RELATED PUBLICATIONS:

United States Department of Health and Human Services. National Center for Health Statistics. "Current Estimates From the National Health Interview Survey, 1994." VITAL AND HEALTH STATISTICS, Series 10, No. 193. DHHS Publication No. (PHS) 96-1521. Public Health Service. Washington, DC: United States Government Printing Office, December 1995.

United States Department of Health and Human Services.
National Center for Health Statistics. "Design and Estimation for
the National Health Interview Survey, 1985-1994." VITAL AND HEALTH
STATISTICS, Series 2, No. 110. DHHS Publication No. (PHS) 89-1384.
Public Health Service. Washington, DC: United States Government
Printing Office, August 1989.

Public Use Data File Documentation

Part I - Tape Formats
National Health Interview Survey, 1994



U.S. DEPARTMENT OF HEALTH AND HUMAN SERVICES
Public Health Service
Centers for Disease Control and Prevention
National Center for Health Statistics

Hyattsville, Maryland
December 1995

GUIDELINES

With the goal of mutual benefit, NCHS requests that recipients of data tapes cooperate in certain actions related to their use.

Any published material derived from the data should acknowledge the National Center for Health Statistics (NCHS) as the original source. The suggested citation, "Source: National Center for Health Statistics, National Health Interview Survey, 1994," should appear at the bottom of all tables. When cited in a bibliography, the suggested citation should read:

National Center for Health Statistics (1995). Public Use Data Tape Documentation, Part I, National Health Interview Survey, 1994 (Machine readable data file and documentation). National Center for Health Statistics, Hyattsville, MD. (Producer). National Technical Information Service, U.S. Department of Commerce, Springfield, VA. 22161 (Distributor)

It should also include a disclaimer that credits any analyses, interpretations, or conclusions reached to the author (recipient of the tape) and not to NCHS, which is responsible only for the initial data. Consumers who wish to publish a technical description of the data should make a reasonable effort to insure that the description is not inconsistent with that published by NCHS.

Tape formats, diagnostic recodes, and guidance on weighting and procedures for deriving estimates from National Health Interview Survey data tapes are included in this volume. Detailed technical information is also contained in the following publications and documents which accompany the NHIS Public Use Data Tape Package. Additional copies of the documentation may be purchased from the National Technical Information Service.

Field Representative's Manual, 1994. Part II, Public Use Data Tape Documentation.

Medical Coding Manual and Short Index, 1994. Part III, Public Use Data Tape Documentation.

Kovar MG, Poe GS. The National Health Interview Survey Design, 1973-84, and Procedures, 1975-83. National Center for Health Statistics. Vital Health Stat 1(18). 1985.

Massey JT, Moore TF, Parsons VL, Tadros W. Design and Estimation for the National Health Interview Survey, 1985-94. National Center for Health Statistics. Vital Health Stat 2(110). 1989.

Adams PF, Marano M. Current Estimates from the National Health Interview Survey, 1994. National Center for Health Statistics. Vital Health Stat 10(193). 1995.

PREFACE

The basic NHIS tape files are created and maintained by Processing Quarter by Record Type. The contents of these tape files are presented in the Outline of Items and Codes for each record type. Note that Household items in tape locations 3-24, 178 and 182-186 are repeated in all records associated with a household; Person items in tape locations 25-92 are repeated in all records associated with a person.

Users of the tape files should take note of the following tape characteristics:

1. Type of Record (Tape Locations 1-2)

- 10 = Household Record - The Household file contains one household record for each interviewed household and each Type A non-interviewed household (see Household locations 28-29).
- 20 = Person Record - The Person file contains one person record for each person for whom information was obtained in an interviewed household.
- 30 = Condition Record - The Condition file contains one condition record for each reported condition.
- 40 = Doctor Visit Record - The Doctor Visit file contains one record for each reported two-week doctor visit (includes telephone calls).
- 50 = Hospital Record - The Hospital file contains one record for each reported hospitalization (twelve-month recall).

2. File Sequence

Each file is in sequence by the following identifying items:

<u>Item</u>	<u>Tape Locations</u>
Year	3-4
Quarter	5
PSU - Random recode	6-8
Week - Census code	9-10
Segment	11-12
Household Number	13-14
Person Number (Blank on Household Record)	15-16
Record Serial Number (Blank on Household and Person Records)	17-18

2. File Sequence - continued

The Quarter x PSU x Week x Segment x Household Number identifies a household.

The Person Number identifies a person within a household. Records belonging to a single family within a household can be identified by using the household identifiers (specified above) and location 62. Unrelated individuals will have an "&" or "-" in this location. Persons within a single family will have the same numeric value from 0-9 in this location on all family records.

The Record Serial Number identifies multiple records within a Record Type for a person; for example, condition records for a person are identified with a unique number beginning with 01 for each condition associated with the person. A person may have zero, one, or a multiple number of condition, hospital, and doctor visit records.

3. Other Tape Characteristics

- .1 Headers and trailers = Standard IBM labels
- .2 Density = 1600 BPI
- .3 Record length = Fixed length of 335 bytes
- .4 Blocksize = 3350 (10 records per block)
- .5 Tape format = All fields are in character format.
- .6 Data Set Names:

HOUSEHOLD = HISY1994.HOUSEHLD

PERSON = HISY1994.PERSONSX

CONDITION = HISY1994.CONDITON

HOSPITAL = HISY1994.HOSPITAL

DOCTOR VISIT = HISY1994.DRVISITX

NOTE: Metropolitan Statistical Areas are those defined for the 1980 Decennial Census.

NATIONAL HEALTH INTERVIEW SURVEY

Calendar Year 1994 Computer Processing

Public Use Data Tape

TABLE OF CONTENTS - PART I

	Page
INTRODUCTION	1
REFERENCES	3
COMPARED CHANGES.....	5
TAPE FORMATS	
Household Record	7
Person Record	17
Condition Record	39
Doctor Visit Record	71
Hospital Record	99
DIAGNOSTIC RECODES	
Recode A. Acute Conditions	123
Recode B. Diseases, Injuries and Impairments	129
Recode C. Chronic Conditions and Impairments	153
TABULATION SPECIFICATIONS AND WEIGHTING - INTRODUCTION	163
SPECIFICATIONS FOR RECREATING CURRENT ESTIMATES TABLES	165
TABULATING DATA FOR CURRENT ESTIMATES TABLES	167
APPENDICES	
Appendix A. Codes for Types of Special Places	175
Appendix B. Industry Recodes	179
Appendix C. Occupation Recodes	185
Appendix D. Description of Class of Accident Code	193
Appendix E. Classification of Operations and Non-operative Procedures for HIS	195

NOTES:

THE NATIONAL HEALTH INTERVIEW SURVEY

INTRODUCTION

Since 1957, the National Center for Health Statistics has conducted the National Health Interview Survey (NHIS) annually. It includes a "core" set of questions on health-related variables which generally change little from year-to-year and supplements which can vary annually. In 1982, however, fairly substantial changes were made to parts of the core. These changes reflect different concepts in the measurement of health-related variables. Therefore, data derived from these changed concepts, particularly limitation of activity, acute conditions, disability days and doctor visits, should not be compared to data gathered before 1982. A discussion of these changes and the effect on resulting statistics are contained in the Series 1, No. 18 report and in a special appendix to the Current Estimates, 1982 (Series 10, No. 150). More information on the survey in general and the 1994 version, in particular, is found in the Current Estimates Series report included with this public use tape documentation. The NHIS is a personal interview household survey using a nationwide sample of the civilian, noninstitutionalized population of the United States. The sample is chosen in such a way that each person included has a known non-zero probability of selection. These probabilities of selection along with adjustments for nonresponse and poststratification are reflected in the sample weights which are provided on the Public Use Tape.

Use of Sample Weights

Since the NHIS uses a multistage sample designed to represent the civilian noninstitutionalized population of the United States, it is necessary to utilize the person's basic weight for proper analysis of the data. In addition to the design and ratio adjustments included in the person basic weight, the person weight is further modified depending on the variable selected (e.g., 2-week bed days), the length of the recall period, and the period of time for which the estimate is to be made.

The chronic condition prevalence factor, however, does not incorporate the person weight. It adjusts the sample for distributional variations (age, sex, race) within the one-sixth subsample of persons who are asked one of six chronic condition lists. It must be multiplied by the person weight to create prevalence estimates of chronic conditions. Details are given in the documentation preceding the condition record tape layout.

Sample Design, Variance, Estimation, and Hypothesis Testing

The data collected in the NHIS are obtained through a complex sample design involving both clustering and stratification. Because of the complex design and the ratio adjustments applied to the sample weights (see previous section on use of sample weights), the direct application of standard statistical analysis methods for variance estimation and hypothesis testing may yield misleading results.

There are computer programs available which provide the capability of variance estimation for complex sample designs. The balanced repeated replication approach(1) is utilized in &REPERR-&PSALMS-OSIRIS.IV(2) to calculate the variance-covariance matrix. SESUDAAN(3) SURREGR and SUDAAN(4,5) are programs that calculate the variance-covariance matrix using the linearization approach(6,7,8) (Taylor series expansion).

In order to provide the user with the capability of estimating the complex sample variances in the NHIS data using the above procedures, we have provided the Basic Weight Before Age-Sex-Race Adjustment (loc. 172-177 - Person Record only), Substratum Identifier (loc. 178), Full Sample Stratum Identifier (loc. 179-181), and Strata and Pseudo Primary Sampling Unit (PSU) (loc. 187-189) codes on the data tapes. These variables and the sample weights are necessary for the calculation of variances.

Even though the overall number of persons in this survey is quite large for statistical inference purposes, subclass analyses can lead to estimators that are unreliable. Consequently, analyses of subclasses require that the user pay particular attention to the coefficient of variation for the estimates of means, proportions and totals. In addition, small sample sizes, or a small number of PSU's used in the variance calculations may produce unstable estimates of the variances using the above computer programs.

REFERENCES

- (1) McCarthy PJ. Replication: An Approach to the Analysis of Data from Complex Surveys. National Center for Health Statistics. Vital Health Stat 2(14). 1966.
- (2) Survey Research Center Computer Support Group. OSIRIS IV User's Manual. Institute for Social Research. 1979.
- (3) Shah BV. "SESUDAAN: Standard Errors Program for Computing of Standardized Rates from Sample Survey Data." Research Triangle Institute, Research Triangle Park, N.C. RTI/5250-00-01S. April, 1981.
- (4) Holt, Mary Margaret (revised April 1982 by B.V. Shah). "SURREGR: Standard Errors of Regression Coefficients from Sample Survey Data." Research Triangle Institute, Research Triangle Park, N.C. May, 1977.
- (5) Shah BV, LaVange LM, Barnwell BG, Killinger JE, and Wheeless SC. "Software for Survey Data Analysis." Research Triangle Institute, Research Triangle Park, N.C. March, 1989.
- (6) Hidiroglou MA, Fuller WA, and Hickman RD. "SUPER CARP". Survey Section, Statistical Laboratory, Iowa State University. Sixth edition. October, 1980.
- (7) Fuller WA. "PC CARP". Statistical Laboratory and Department of Statistics, Iowa State University, Ames, Iowa. September, 1989.
- (8) Contingency Table Analysis for Complex Sample Designs (CPLX). U.S. Bureau of the Census.

NOTES:

CHANGES IN THE 1994 PUBLIC USE TAPE COMPARED TO 1993

The 1994 Public Use Tape resembles the 1993 version, with a few exceptions. The most notable change in 1994 were: a) the addition of a footnote for clarification to a field (Household Loc. 24); and b) a field was added noting a working telephone inside the home (Household Loc. 77). Caution-please note that data collection in 1994 occurred every other week within the second quarter, and the weights have been re-adjusted to re-weight the data to create national estimates. The location and code differences are described below:

HOUSEHOLD RECORD VARIABLE:

<u>Tape Location</u>	<u>Item and Codes</u>
24	Has Telephone (A footnote was added to this field to note the existence of another field labeled working telephone inside)
77	Working Telephone Inside the Home
78-177	Blank

PERSON RECORD VARIABLE

<u>Tape Location</u>	<u>Item and Codes</u>
146-171	Blank

NOTES:

H O U S E H O L D R E C O R D

NOTES:

NHIS PUBLIC USE TAPE RECORDS
Outline of Items and Codes
Number of Records = 48,584
HOUSEHOLD RECORD

Tape Locations	Item No.	Frequency	Items and Codes	
1-2	-	RECORD TYPE		
		48,584	10. Household Record	
3-4	-	PROCESSING YEAR		
		48,584	94. 1994	
5	-	PROCESSING QUARTER		
		11,391	1. Quarter 1	
		12,448	2. Quarter 2	
		12,310	3. Quarter 3	
		12,435	4. Quarter 4	
6-8	HH-5	RANDOM RECODE OF PSU NUMBER		
9-10	HH-5	WEEK - CENSUS CODE*		
		01, 21, 41, 61, 81	... Week 01	
		02, 22, 42, 62, 82	... Week 02	
		03, 23, 43, 63, 83	... Week 03	
		04, 24, 44, 64, 84	... Week 04	
		05, 25, 45, 65, 85	... Week 05	
		06, 26, 46, 66, 86	... Week 06	
		07, 27, 47, 67, 87	... Week 07	
		08, 28, 48, 68, 88	... Week 08	
		09, 29, 49, 69, 89	... Week 09	
		10, 30, 50, 70, 90	... Week 10	
		11, 31, 51, 71, 91	... Week 11	
		12, 32, 52, 72, 92	... Week 12	
		13, 33, 53, 73, 93	... Week 13	

* This code represents the initial week of assignment. The interview may be re-assigned for administrative purposes. See Locations 19-20 for the code which reflects the actual week assigned for conducting the interview.

NHIS PUBLIC USE TAPE RECORD
HOUSEHOLD RECORD

Tape Locations	Item No.	Frequency	Items and Codes
11-12	HH-5		SEGMENT NUMBER Week plus Segment Number identifies the segment
13-14	HH-5		HOUSEHOLD NUMBER Numbered within PSU-Week-Segment
15-16	-		BLANK (Person Number on other record types)
17-18	-		BLANK (Record Serial Number on other record types)
19-20	HH-5		PROCESSING WEEK CODE (Numbered within Quarter) 2,831 01. Week 01 3,899 02. Week 02 3,835 03. Week 03 3,711 04. Week 04 3,925 05. Week 05 3,841 06. Week 06 3,843 07. Week 07 2,820 08. Week 08 3,698 09. Week 09 3,798 10. Week 10 3,738 11. Week 11 3,794 12. Week 12 3,851 13. Week 13
21	Recode		LATE INTERVIEW (OR LAST ATTEMPT) FLAG 26,732 0. Interview not late 15,047 1. One week late 5,378 2. Two weeks late 1,427 3. Unknown

NHIS PUBLIC USE TAPE RECORD
HOUSEHOLD RECORD

Tape Locations	Item No.	Frequency	Items and Codes																												
22-23	HH-10c,d		<p>TYPE OF LIVING QUARTERS:</p> <p><u>Housing Unit = (00-07)</u></p> <table><tbody><tr><td>1,542</td><td>00. Housing unit; kind unknown</td></tr><tr><td>43,999</td><td>01. House, apartment, flat</td></tr><tr><td>39</td><td>02. HU in nontransient hotel, motel, etc.</td></tr><tr><td>41</td><td>03. HU-permanent in transient hotel, motel, etc.</td></tr><tr><td>34</td><td>04. HU in rooming house</td></tr><tr><td>2,148</td><td>05. Mobile home or trailer with no permanent room added</td></tr><tr><td>291</td><td>06. Mobile home or trailer with one or more permanent rooms added</td></tr><tr><td>34</td><td>07. HU not specified above</td></tr></tbody></table> <p><u>Other Unit = (08-13)</u></p> <table><tbody><tr><td>24</td><td>08. Quarters not HU in rooming or boarding house</td></tr><tr><td>0</td><td>09. Unit not permanent in transient hotel, motel, etc.</td></tr><tr><td>7</td><td>10. Unoccupied site for mobile home, trailer, or tent</td></tr><tr><td>333</td><td>11. Student quarters in college dormitory</td></tr><tr><td>86</td><td>12. Other unit not specified above</td></tr><tr><td>6</td><td>13. Other unit; kind unknown</td></tr></tbody></table>	1,542	00. Housing unit; kind unknown	43,999	01. House, apartment, flat	39	02. HU in nontransient hotel, motel, etc.	41	03. HU-permanent in transient hotel, motel, etc.	34	04. HU in rooming house	2,148	05. Mobile home or trailer with no permanent room added	291	06. Mobile home or trailer with one or more permanent rooms added	34	07. HU not specified above	24	08. Quarters not HU in rooming or boarding house	0	09. Unit not permanent in transient hotel, motel, etc.	7	10. Unoccupied site for mobile home, trailer, or tent	333	11. Student quarters in college dormitory	86	12. Other unit not specified above	6	13. Other unit; kind unknown
1,542	00. Housing unit; kind unknown																														
43,999	01. House, apartment, flat																														
39	02. HU in nontransient hotel, motel, etc.																														
41	03. HU-permanent in transient hotel, motel, etc.																														
34	04. HU in rooming house																														
2,148	05. Mobile home or trailer with no permanent room added																														
291	06. Mobile home or trailer with one or more permanent rooms added																														
34	07. HU not specified above																														
24	08. Quarters not HU in rooming or boarding house																														
0	09. Unit not permanent in transient hotel, motel, etc.																														
7	10. Unoccupied site for mobile home, trailer, or tent																														
333	11. Student quarters in college dormitory																														
86	12. Other unit not specified above																														
6	13. Other unit; kind unknown																														
24	HH-11a		<p>HAS TELEPHONE*</p> <table><tbody><tr><td>41,119</td><td>1. Yes, phone number given</td></tr><tr><td>2,036</td><td>2. Yes, no phone number given</td></tr><tr><td>2,095</td><td>3. No</td></tr><tr><td>455</td><td>4. Unknown</td></tr><tr><td>2,879</td><td>Blank. Non-interview</td></tr></tbody></table>	41,119	1. Yes, phone number given	2,036	2. Yes, no phone number given	2,095	3. No	455	4. Unknown	2,879	Blank. Non-interview																		
41,119	1. Yes, phone number given																														
2,036	2. Yes, no phone number given																														
2,095	3. No																														
455	4. Unknown																														
2,879	Blank. Non-interview																														
25-26	HH-6		<p>SPECIAL PLACE (Unedited)</p> <p>SEE APPENDIX A</p> <p>Blank. Not applicable</p>																												

*Item number HH-11b, Working Telephone Inside the Home, is in Loc. 77.

NHIS PUBLIC USE TAPE RECORD
HOUSEHOLD RECORD

Tape Locations	Item No.	Frequency	Items and Codes
27	HH-15		COMPLETED INTERVIEW
		45,397	1. Completed interview - non-military household
		2,879	2. Non-interview
		308	3. Completed interview - military household*
28-29	HH-14		NON-INTERVIEW REASON
			<u>Type A</u>
		2,041	01. Refused
		396	02. No one at home
		301	03. Temporarily absent
		141	04. Other
		45,705	Blank. Not applicable (completed interview)
30-33	HH-15		DATE OF COMPLETION (OR LAST ATTEMPT) OF INITIAL INTERVIEW (Unedited)
30-31			<u>MONTH</u>
			01. January 07. July
			02. February 08. August
			03. March 09. September
			04. April 10. October
			05. May 11. November
			06. June 12. December
			Blank.
32-33			<u>DAY</u>
			01-31. Day of Month
			Blank.
34-35	Generated		NUMBER OF FAMILIES IN THE HOUSEHOLD - (Unrelated individuals are considered to be one-member families).
			Blank. Non-interview

*Spouse or parent is in the Armed Forces.

NHIS PUBLIC USE TAPE RECORD
HOUSEHOLD RECORD

Tape Locations	Item No.	Frequency	Items and Codes
<u>36-55</u>	Generated		SIZE OF FAMILY 00. Not applicable or only unrelated individuals 01+ Number of persons in family Blank. Non-interview
36-37			SIZE OF FAMILY - Primary Family
38-39			SIZE OF FAMILY - Secondary Family No. 1
40-41			SIZE OF FAMILY - Secondary Family No. 2
42-43			SIZE OF FAMILY - Secondary Family No. 3
44-45			SIZE OF FAMILY - Secondary Family No. 4
46-47			SIZE OF FAMILY - Secondary Family No. 5
48-49			SIZE OF FAMILY - Secondary Family No. 6
50-51			SIZE OF FAMILY - Secondary Family No. 7
52-53			SIZE OF FAMILY - Secondary Family No. 8
54-55			SIZE OF FAMILY - Secondary Family No. 9
56-57	Generated		NUMBER OF UNRELATED INDIVIDUALS 00. Not applicable 01+ Number of unrelated individuals Blank. Non-interview

NHIS PUBLIC USE TAPE RECORD
HOUSEHOLD RECORD

Tape Locations	Item No.	Frequency	Items and Codes
58	Generated		REFERENCE PERSON PRESENT - Primary Family 1. Yes or all adult family members in Armed Forces Blank. Household with unrelated duals only or non-interviewed household
59			REFERENCE PERSON PRESENT - Secondary Family No. 1
60			REFERENCE PERSON PRESENT - Secondary Family No. 2
61			REFERENCE PERSON PRESENT - Secondary Family No. 3
62			REFERENCE PERSON PRESENT - Secondary Family No. 4
63			REFERENCE PERSON PRESENT - Secondary Family No. 5
64			REFERENCE PERSON PRESENT - Secondary Family No. 6
65			REFERENCE PERSON PRESENT - Secondary Family No. 7
66			REFERENCE PERSON PRESENT - Secondary Family No. 8
67			REFERENCE PERSON PRESENT - Secondary Family No. 9

NHIS PUBLIC USE TAPE RECORD
HOUSEHOLD RECORD

Tape Locations	Item No.	Frequency	Items and Codes
68-69	Generated		NUMBER OF PERSON RECORDS FOR THE HOUSEHOLD
70-71	Generated		NUMBER OF CONDITION RECORDS FOR THE HOUSEHOLD
72-73	Generated		NUMBER OF TWO-WEEK DOCTOR VISIT RECORDS FOR THE HOUSEHOLD
74-75	Generated		NUMBER OF HOSPITAL RECORDS FOR THE HOUSEHOLD
76	A-A2		CONDITION LIST ASSIGNED
		7,637	1. Condition List 1, Skin and Musculoskeletal
		7,562	2. Condition List 2, Impairments
		7,675	3. Condition List 3, Digestive
		7,593	4. Condition List 4, Miscellaneous
		7,604	5. Condition List 5, Circulatory
		7,548	6. Condition List 6, Respiratory
		86	7. Unknown
		2,879	Blank. Non-interview
77	HH-116		WORKING TELEPHONE INSIDE THE HOME
		40,647	1. Yes, working phone in home
		2,426	2. No working phone in home
		2,632	9. Unknown
		2,879	Blank. Non-interview
78-177	-		BLANK
178	Master Record		TYPE OF SUBSTRATUM
		7,829	0. Permit
		4,257	1. Area, oversampled for blacks
		36,498	2. Area, not oversampled for blacks
179-181	-		BLANK
182	Master Record		REGION
		9,835	1. Northeast
		12,191	2. Midwest
		16,194	3. South
		10,364	4. West

NHIS PUBLIC USE TAPE RECORD
HOUSEHOLD RECORD

Tape Locations	Item No.	Frequency	Items and Codes
183	Master Record		GEOGRAPHIC DISTRIBUTION <u>MSA Size</u>
		21,158	1. 1,000,000 or more
		12,672	2. 250,000 - 999,999
		3,033	3. 100,000 - 249,999
		786	4. Under 100,000
		10,935	Blank. Non-MSA
184	-		BLANK
185	Master Record		TYPE OF PSU
		26,896	1. MSA - Self-representing
		10,753	3. MSA - Nonself-representing
		7	4. Non-MSA - Self-representing
		10,928	6. Non-MSA - Nonself-representing
186	Recode		MSA - NON-MSA RESIDENCE
		15,136	1. MSA - Central City
		20,041	2. MSA - Not Central City
		10,003	3. Non-MSA - Nonfarm
		525	4. Non-MSA - Farm
		2,879	Blank. Non-interview
187-200	-		BLANK
201-206	-		QUARTER BASIC WEIGHT Adjusted by Segment and Special HH Sampling Factors (XXXXX.X)
207-335	-		BLANK

P E R S O N R E C O R D

NOTES :

NHIS PUBLIC USE TAPE RECORDS
Outline of Items and Codes
Number of Records = 116,179
PERSON RECORD

Tape Locations	Item No.	Frequency	Items and Codes
RECORD TYPE			
1-2	-	116,179	20. Person Record
PROCESSING YEAR			
3-4	-	116,179	94. 1994
PROCESSING QUARTER			
5	-	27,246 30,042 29,543 29,348	1. Quarter 1 2. Quarter 2 3. Quarter 3 4. Quarter 4
6-8	HH-5	RANDOM RECODE OF PSU NUMBER	
9-10	HH-5	WEEK - CENSUS CODE*	
		01, 21, 41, 61, 81 ... Week 01 02, 22, 42, 62, 82 ... Week 02 03, 23, 43, 63, 83 ... Week 03 04, 24, 44, 64, 84 ... Week 04 05, 25, 45, 65, 85 ... Week 05 06, 26, 46, 66, 86 ... Week 06 07, 27, 47, 67, 87 ... Week 07 08, 28, 48, 68, 88 ... Week 08 09, 29, 49, 69, 89 ... Week 09 10, 30, 50, 70, 90 ... Week 10 11, 31, 51, 71, 91 ... Week 11 12, 32, 52, 72, 92 ... Week 12 13, 33, 53, 73, 93 ... Week 13	

*This code represents the initial week of assignment. The interview may be re-assigned for administrative purposes. See Locations 19-20 for the code which reflects the actual week assigned for conducting the interview.

NHIS PUBLIC USE TAPE RECORD
PERSON RECORD

Tape Locations	Item No.	Frequency	Items and Codes
11-12	HH-5		SEGMENT NUMBER Week plus Segment Number identifies the segment
13-14	HH-5		HOUSEHOLD NUMBER Numbered within PSU-Week-Segment
15-16	-		PERSON NUMBER
17-18	-		BLANK (Record Serial Number on other record types).
19-20	HH-5		PROCESSING WEEK CODE (Numbered within Quarter) 6,803 01. Week 01 9,320 02. Week 02 9,256 03. Week 03 8,893 04. Week 04 9,317 05. Week 05 9,300 06. Week 06 9,295 07. Week 07 9,198 08. Week 08 8,843 09. Week 09 9,069 10. Week 10 8,733 11. Week 11 9,022 12. Week 12 9,130 13. Week 13
21	Recode		LATE INTERVIEW (OR LAST ATTEMPT) FLAG 66,857 0. Interview not late 34,978 1. One week late 11,651 2. Two weeks late 2,693 3. Unknown

NHIS PUBLIC USE TAPE RECORD
PERSON RECORD

Tape Locations	Item No.	Frequency	Items and Codes
22-23	HH-10c,d		<p>TYPE OF LIVING QUARTERS:</p> <p><u>Housing Unit = (00-07)</u></p> <p>2,439 00. Housing unit; kind unknown 107,174 01. House, apartment, flat 53 02. HU in nontransient hotel, motel, etc. 45 03. HU-permanent in transient hotel, motel, etc. 37 04. HU in rooming house 5,027 05. Mobile home or trailer with no permanent room added 672 06. Mobile home or trailer with one or more permanent rooms added 84 07. HU not specified above</p> <p><u>Other Unit = (08-13)</u></p> <p>33 08. Quarters not HU in rooming or boarding house 0 09. Unit not permanent in transient hotel, motel, etc. 16 10. Unoccupied site for mobile home, trailer, or tent 459 11. Student quarters in college dormitory 126 12. Other unit not specified above 14 13. Other unit; kind unknown</p>
24	HH-11a		<p>HAS TELEPHONE</p> <p>104,802 1. Yes, phone number given 4,739 2. Yes, no phone number given 5,522 3. No 1,116 4. Unknown</p>
25	A-1		<p>SEX</p> <p>55,364 1. Male 60,815 2. Female</p>
26	-		<p>BLANK</p>

NHIS PUBLIC USE TAPE RECORD
PERSON RECORD

Tape Locations	Item No.	Frequency	Items and Codes
27-28	Person Column		AGE
		1,660 114,509 10	00. Under 1 year 01-98. Number of years 99. 99+ years of age
29	Recode		AGE RECODE #1
		9,279 23,181 10,068 35,899 23,181 4,546 4,066 5,959	1. Under 5 years 2. 5-17 years 3. 18-24 years 4. 25-44 years 5. 45-64 years 6. 65-69 years 7. 70-74 years 8. 75 years and over
30	Recode		AGE RECODE #2
		11,231 19,707 11,590 17,421 18,478 13,522 9,659 8,612 5,959	1. Under 6 years 2. 6-16 years 3. 17-24 years 4. 25-34 years 5. 35-44 years 6. 45-54 years 7. 55-64 years 8. 65-74 years 9. 75 years and over
31-32	Recode		AGE RECODE #3
		5,340 110,839	00-35. Months 36. Over 3 years
33	-		BLANK

NHIS PUBLIC USE TAPE RECORD
PERSON RECORD

Tape Locations	Item No.	Frequency	Items and Codes
<u>34-39</u>	A-3		MONTH AND YEAR OF BIRTH
34-35			MONTH 01. January 07. July 02. February 08. August 03. March 09. September 04. April 10. October 05. May 11. November 06. June 12. December 99. Unknown
36-39			YEAR OF BIRTH 1800-1899. 1800-1899 1900-1995. 1900-1995 9999. Unknown
40	Recode		HISPANIC ORIGIN IMPUTED FLAG 114,387 0. Hispanic Origin Known 1,792 1. Hispanic Origin Imputed from Reference Person
41-42	L-4		MAIN RACIAL BACKGROUND* (See notation for locations 43-45) 89,574 01. White 16,462 02. Black 1,128 03. Indian (American) 17 04. Eskimo 15 05. Aleut 842 06. Chinese 840 07. Filipino 45 08. Hawaiian 377 09. Korean 400 10. Vietnamese 393 11. Japanese 482 12. Asian Indian 6 13. Samoan 9 14. Guamanian 425 15. Other API 2,605 16. Other race 288 17. Multiple race 2,271 99. Unknown

*Some categories may be too small to analyze separately and therefore may produce unreliable estimates; in addition, counts may not agree with those produced by the Census Bureau.

NHIS PUBLIC USE TAPE RECORD
PERSON RECORD

Tape Locations	Item No.	Frequency	Items and Codes
RACE RECODES			
43-45	Recode		
43			<u>RECODE 1*</u>
		94,503	1. White
		16,541	2. Black
		5,135	3. Other
44			<u>RECODE 2</u>
		94,503	1. White
		21,676	2. Non-white
45			<u>RECODE 3</u>
		16,541	1. Black
		99,638	2. Non-black
46-47	L-3		HISPANIC ORIGIN**
		71	00. Multiple Hispanic
		1,372	01. Puerto Rican
		574	02. Cuban
		2,746	03. Mexican-Mexicano
		3,977	04. Mexican-American
		119	05. Chicano
		1,241	06. Other Latin American
		1,183	07. Other Spanish
		428	08. Spanish, DK type
		1,241	09. Unknown if Spanish origin
		103,227	10. Not Spanish origin
48	L-7		MARITAL STATUS
		25,865	0. Under 14 years
		52,679	1. Married - spouse in household
		867	2. Married - spouse not in household
		6,168	3. Widowed
		6,536	4. Divorced
		1,775	5. Separated
		21,392	6. Never married
		897	7. Unknown

*This recode is used to categorize race in Current Estimates tables.

**If unknown, the family reference person code was imputed. A flag indicating imputation is in loc. 40 and the relationship to reference person is in loc. 63.

NHIS PUBLIC USE TAPE RECORD
PERSON RECORD

Tape Locations	Item No.	Frequency	Items and Codes
49	L-1		VETERAN STATUS 69,630 1. Non-veteran 31 2. WW I 3,045 3. WW II 1,866 4. Korean War 3,487 5. Vietnam veteran 1,379 6. Post-Vietnam 2,120 7. Other service 344 8. Served in Armed Forces, unknown if war veteran 1,817 9. Unknown if served in Armed Forces 32,460 Blank. Under 18 years of age
50	L-1		ACTIVE GUARD/RESERVE STATUS FOR PERSONS ON ACTIVE DUTY IN ARMED FORCES 69,630 0. Non-veteran 1,021 1. All service in Guard/Reserve 1,833 2. Some service in Guard/Reserve 41 3. Unknown if all service in Guard/Reserve 8,411 4. No active service in Guard/Reserve 2,783 5. Unknown if ever active member in Guard/Reserve or served in Armed Forces 32,460 Blank. Under 18 years of age
51-52	L-2		EDUCATION OF INDIVIDUAL - COMPLETED YEARS 4,551 00. Never attended; kindergarten only 65,589 01-12. Grades 1-12 <u>College:</u> 6,522 13. 1 year 8,196 14. 2 years 3,119 15. 3 years 9,860 16. 4 years 2,252 17. 5 years 5,018 18. 6 years or more 1,793 19. Unknown 9,279 Blank. Under 5 years of age

NHIS PUBLIC USE TAPE RECORD
PERSON RECORD

Tape Locations	Item No.	Frequency	Items and Codes
53	Recode		EDUCATION OF INDIVIDUAL RECODE
		4,551	0. None; kindergarten only
		21,067	1. 1-8 years (elementary)
		13,691	2. 9-11 years (high school)
		30,831	3. 12 years (high school graduate)
		17,837	4. 1-3 years (college)
		9,860	5. 4 years (college graduate)
		7,270	6. 5+ years (post-college)
		1,793	7. Unknown
		9,279	Blank. Under 5 years of age
54-55	-		HIGHEST EDUCATION OF RESPONSIBLE ADULT FAMILY MEMBER - (Detail)
		166	00. Never attended; kindergarten only
		53,526	01-12. Grades 1-12
			<u>College:</u>
		9,302	13. 1 year
		13,561	14. 2 years
		5,098	15. 3 years
		17,642	16. 4 years
		4,293	17. 5 years
		11,274	18. 6 years or more
		1,317	19. Unknown
56	-		HIGHEST EDUCATION OF RESPONSIBLE ADULT FAMILY MEMBER - Recode
		166	0. None; kindergarten only
		5,110	1. 1-8 years (elementary)
		9,583	2. 9-11 years (high school)
		38,833	3. 12 years (high school graduate)
		27,961	4. 1-3 years (college)
		17,642	5. 4 years (college graduate)
		15,567	6. 5+ years (post-college)
		1,317	7. Unknown
57	L-8		FAMILY INCOME \$20,000 OR MORE
		34,354	1. Less than \$20,000
		77,457	2. \$20,000 or more
		4,368	3. Unknown

NHIS PUBLIC USE TAPE RECORD
PERSON RECORD

Tape Locations	Item No.	Frequency	Items and Codes
58-59	L-8		FAMILY INCOME
		577	00. Less than \$1,000
		696	01. \$ 1,000 - \$ 1,999
		715	02. 2,000 - 2,999
		759	03. 3,000 - 3,999
		916	04. 4,000 - 4,999
		1,311	05. 5,000 - 5,999
		1,311	06. 6,000 - 6,999
		1,548	07. 7,000 - 7,999
		1,399	08. 8,000 - 8,999
		1,671	09. 9,000 - 9,999
		2,083	10. 10,000 - 10,999
		1,185	11. 11,000 - 11,999
		2,141	12. 12,000 - 12,999
		1,367	13. 13,000 - 13,999
		1,439	14. 14,000 - 14,999
		1,917	15. 15,000 - 15,999
		1,346	16. 16,000 - 16,999
		1,428	17. 17,000 - 17,999
		1,807	18. 18,000 - 18,999
		2,301	19. 19,000 - 19,999
		8,804	20. 20,000 - 24,999
		7,413	21. 25,000 - 29,999
		7,866	22. 30,000 - 34,999
		6,446	23. 35,000 - 39,999
		6,412	24. 40,000 - 44,999
		5,533	25. 45,000 - 49,999
		25,766	26. \$50,000 and over
		20,022	27. Unknown
60	Recode		FAMILY INCOME RECODE
		3,663	0. Under \$5,000
		2,622	1. \$ 5,000 - \$ 6,999
		4,618	2. 7,000 - 9,999
		8,215	3. 10,000 - 14,999
		8,799	4. 15,000 - 19,999
		8,804	5. 20,000 - 24,999
		15,279	6. 25,000 - 34,999
		18,391	7. 35,000 - 49,999
		25,766	8. \$50,000 or more
		20,022	9. Unknown

NHIS PUBLIC USE TAPE RECORD
PERSON RECORD

Tape Locations	Item No.	Frequency	Items and Codes
61	Generated		NHIS POVERTY INDEX*
		90,614 14,620 10,945	1. At or above poverty threshold 2. Below poverty threshold 3. Unknown
	<u>62-63</u>		FAMILY RELATIONSHIP
62	A-2		TYPE OF FAMILY
		12,495 1,305 102,199 180	&. Primary individual -. Secondary individual 0. Primary family 1-9. Secondary family
63	A-2		RELATIONSHIP TO REFERENCE PERSON
		11,893 34,575 25,740 264 37,689 2,312 1,042 2,628 36 0	&. Reference person, living alone 0. Reference person, 2+ persons in household 1. Spouse, other spouse NOT in Armed Forces and living at home 2. Spouse, other spouse IN Armed Forces and living at home 3. Child of reference person or spouse 4. Grandchild of reference person or spouse 5. Parent of reference person or spouse 6. Other relative 7. Child of ineligible reference person 9. Unknown
64	Recode		FAMILY RELATIONSHIP RECODE
		11,893 1,907 52,651 49,728	1. Living alone 2. Living only with non-relative 3. Living with spouse 4. Living with relative - other
65-66	Generated		SIZE OF FAMILY**
			Unrelated individuals are coded 01

*Based on family size, number of children under 18 years of age & family income using the 1993 poverty levels derived from the August, 1994 Current Population Survey.

**Count includes spouse in military but living at home.

NHIS PUBLIC USE TAPE RECORD
PERSON RECORD

Tape Locations	Item No.	Frequency	Items and Codes
67	Generated		SIZE OF FAMILY RECODE 1-8. Number of members 9. 9+ members
68	A-2		PARENT/OTHER ADULT RELATIVE (under 25 years old and never married) 24,375 1. Both parents, no other relative 6,471 2. Mother only 646 3. Father only 2,541 4. Both parents and other 21+ year old adult relative 2,045 5. Mother and other 21+ year old adult relative 206 6. Father and other 21+ year old adult relative 491 7. No parent, but one 21+ year old adult relative 776 8. No parent, but two or more 21+ year old adult relatives 327 9. Unknown 1,771 0. Other 76,530 Blank. Not applicable (25+ years old or ever married)
69	B-1 B-8		MAJOR ACTIVITY (18+ years old) 50,991 1. Working 14,518 2. Keeping house 4,866 3. Going to school 12,674 4. Something else 670 5. Unknown 32,460 Blank. Not applicable (Under 18 years)
70	G-4		HEALTH STATUS 43,095 1. Excellent 32,622 2. Very Good 27,281 3. Good 8,743 4. Fair 3,486 5. Poor 952 6. Unknown
71	Recode		ACTIVITY LIMITATION STATUS - (all ages)* 5,553 1. Unable to perform major activity 6,811 2. Limited in kind/amount major activity 5,599 3. Limited in other activities 98,216 4. Not limited (includes unknowns)

*This recode is used to categorize persons with limitation of activity in the Current Estimates tables.

**NHIS PUBLIC USE TAPE RECORD
PERSON RECORD**

Tape Locations	Item No.	Frequency	Items and Codes
72	Recode		ACTIVITY LIMITATION STATUS MEASURED BY "ABILITY TO WORK" (18-69 years) <ul style="list-style-type: none"> 5,294 1. Unable to work 3,667 2. Limited in kind/amount of work 2,849 3. Limited in other activities 61,884 4. Not limited (includes unknowns) 42,485 Blank. Not applicable (under 18 years, 70+ years)
73	B-11		LIMITATION OF SCHOOL ACTIVITIES (5-17 years) <ul style="list-style-type: none"> 177 1. Unable to attend school 860 2. Attends special school/classes 125 3. Needs special school/classes 257 4. Limited in school attendance 515 5. Limited in other activities 21,247 6. Not limited (includes unknowns) 92,998 Blank. Not applicable (under 5 years or 18+ years)
74	B-14		NEEDS HELP WITH PERSONAL CARE (5-59 years old and limited, or age 60-69 years)* <ul style="list-style-type: none"> 742 1. Unable to perform personal care needs 1,558 2. Limited in performing other routine needs 16,928 3. Not limited in performing personal or routine needs 583 4. Unknown 96,368 Blank. Not applicable (under 5 years; 5-59 years not limited; 70+ years old)

*For persons 70+ years, codes 1 and 2 in loc. 71 correspond to codes 1 and 2 in loc. 74.

NHIS PUBLIC USE TAPE RECORD
PERSON RECORD

Tape Locations	Item No.	Frequency	Items and Codes
75	D-1		<p>EMPLOYMENT STATUS IN PAST 2 WEEKS (18+ years)</p> <p><u>In the Labor Force:</u> (1-7)</p> <p><u>Currently employed:</u> (1-3)</p> <p>52,280 1. Worked in past 2 weeks 981 2. Did not work, has job; not on lay-off and not looking for work 33 3. Did not work, has job; looking for work</p> <p><u>Unemployed:</u> (4-7)</p> <p>147 4. Did not work, has job; on lay-off 11 5. Did not work, has job; on lay- off and looking for work 426 6. Did not work, has job; unknown if looking or on lay-off 1,893 7. Did not work, has no job; looking for work or on lay-off</p> <p><u>Not in Labor Force (18+ years):</u> (8)</p> <p>27,948 8. Not in Labor Force (18+ years) 32,460 Blank. Not applicable (Under 18 years old)</p>
76	L-6		<p>CLASS OF WORKER</p> <p>27,948 0. Not in labor force 39,183 1. Private company 1,481 2. Federal Government employee 2,402 3. State Government employee 4,436 4. Local Government employee 1,500 5. Incorporated business 5,073 6. Self-employed 87 7. Without pay 92 8. Never worked 1,517 9. Unknown 32,460 Blank. Under 18</p>
77-79	L-6		<p>INDUSTRY DETAIL CODE</p> <p>55,771 010-998. Code number 60,408 Blank. Not applicable</p>
80-81	Recode		<p>INDUSTRY RECODE 1</p> <p>SEE APPENDIX B</p>
82-83	Recode		<p>INDUSTRY RECODE 2</p> <p>SEE APPENDIX B</p>

NHIS PUBLIC USE TAPE RECORD
PERSON RECORD

Tape Locations	Item No.	Frequency	Items and Codes
84-86	L-6		OCCUPATION DETAIL CODE 55,771 001-998. Code number 60,408 Blank. Not applicable
87-88	Recode		OCCUPATION RECODE 1 SEE APPENDIX C
89-90	Recode		OCCUPATION RECODE 2 SEE APPENDIX C
91	L-R		RESPONDENT 52,387 1. Self-entirely 6,174 2. Self-partly 56,535 3. Proxy 1,083 4. Unknown
92	Recode		CONDITION LIST ASSIGNED AND ASKED 19,206 1. Condition List 1, Skin and musculoskeletal 19,146 2. Condition List 2, Impairments 19,462 3. Condition List 3, Digestive 19,088 4. Condition List 4, Miscellaneous 19,296 5. Condition List 5, Circulatory 19,081 6. Condition List 6, Respiratory 900 7. Unknown
93-94	G-5		HEIGHT WITHOUT SHOES (18+ years) 36-98. Number of inches 99. Unknown Blank. Under 18 years of age

NHIS PUBLIC USE TAPE RECORD
PERSON RECORD

Tape Locations	Item No.	Frequency	Items and Codes
95-97	G-5		WEIGHT WITHOUT SHOES (18+ years) 050-500. Number of pounds 501. Unknown Blank. Under 18 years of age
98-99	Recode		TOTAL RESTRICTED ACTIVITY DAYS IN PAST TWO WEEKS 103,756 00. None 12,423 01-14. Days
100-101	D-4		BED DAYS IN PAST TWO WEEKS 109,180 00. None 6,999 01-14. Days
102-103	D-2		WORK-LOSS DAYS IN PAST TWO WEEKS (control on Currently Employed, 75:1-3) 113,108 00. None 3,071 01-14. Days
104-105	D-3		SCHOOL-LOSS DAYS IN PAST TWO WEEKS 114,377 00. None 1,802 01-14. Days
106-107	D-6		OTHER DAYS OF RESTRICTED ACTIVITY IN PAST TWO WEEKS 109,955 00. None 6,224 01-14. Days
108-110	G-2		BED DAYS IN PAST 12 MONTHS 63,730 000. None 51,163 001-365. 1-365 days 1,286 366. Unknown
111	Recode		BED DAYS IN PAST 12 MONTHS - Recode 63,730 0. None 39,757 1. 1-7 days 8,285 2. 8-30 days 2,453 3. 31-180 days 668 4. 181-365 days 1,286 5. Unknown

NHIS PUBLIC USE TAPE RECORD
PERSON RECORD

Tape Locations	Item No.	Frequency	Items and Codes
112-114	G-3		DOCTOR VISITS IN PAST 12 MONTHS
		26,629	000. None
		88,948	001-996. Visits
		0	997. 997+ visits
		602	998. Unknown
115	G-3		INTERVAL SINCE LAST DOCTOR VISIT
		210	0. Never
		90,168	1. Less than 1 year
		10,611	2. 1 to less than 2 years
		9,024	3. 2 to less than 5 years
		3,697	4. 5 years or more
		2,469	5. Unknown
116-117	Generated		NUMBER OF CONDITIONS
118-119	Generated		NUMBER OF ACUTE INCIDENCE CONDITIONS
120-121	Generated		NUMBER OF TWO-WEEK DOCTOR VISITS
122-123	Generated		NUMBER OF SHORT-STAY HOSPITAL EPISODES IN PAST 12 MONTHS
124-126	Generated		SHORT-STAY HOSPITAL EPISODE DAYS IN PAST 12 MONTHS
127-128	Generated		NUMBER OF SHORT-STAY HOSPITAL EPISODES IN PAST 12 MONTHS EXCLUDING DELIVERY*
129-131	Generated		SHORT-STAY HOSPITAL EPISODE DAYS IN PAST 12 MONTHS EXCLUDING DELIVERY*
132-133	Generated		NUMBER OF SHORT-STAY HOSPITAL DISCHARGES IN PAST 6 MONTHS

*Based on operation codes and reason entered hospital.

NHIS PUBLIC USE TAPE RECORD
PERSON RECORD

Tape Locations	Item No.	Frequency	Items and Codes
134-136	Generated		NUMBER OF DAYS IN SHORT-STAY HOSPITAL IN PAST 12 MONTHS FOR DISCHARGES IN PAST 6 MONTHS
137-138	Generated		NUMBER OF SHORT-STAY HOSPITAL DISCHARGES IN PAST 6 MONTHS EXCLUDING DELIVERY*
139-141	Generated		NUMBER OF DAYS IN SHORT-STAY HOSPITAL IN PAST 12 MONTHS FOR DISCHARGES IN PAST 6 MONTHS EXCLUDING DELIVERY*
142-143	-		BLANK
144	L-9b		YEARS LIVED IN STATE OF PRESENT RESIDENCE
		3,139	1. Less than 1 year
		11,270	2. 1 yr., less than 5 years
		11,689	3. 5 yrs., less than 10 yrs.
		10,089	4. 10 yrs., less than 15 yrs.
		64,434	5. 15 years or more
		4,549	9. Unknown
		11,009	Blank. Not applicable (Foreign born)
145	L-9c		YEARS LIVED IN UNITED STATES
		418	1. Less than 1 year
		1,801	2. 1 yr., less than 5 years
		1,960	3. 5 yrs., less than 10 yrs.
		1,744	4. 10 yrs., less than 15 yrs.
		4,853	5. 15 years or more
		233	9. Unknown
		105,170	Blank. Not applicable (U.S. born)
146-171	-		BLANK
172-177	-		QUARTER BASIC WEIGHT BEFORE AGE-SEX-RACE ADJUSTMENT (Has one implied decimal)

*Based on operation codes and reason entered hospital.

NHIS PUBLIC USE TAPE RECORD
PERSON RECORD

Tape Locations	Item No.	Frequency	Items and Codes
178	Master Record		TYPE OF SUBSTRATUM
		19,315	0. Permit
		10,463	1. Area, oversampled for blacks
		86,401	2. Area, not oversampled for blacks
179-181	-		FULL SAMPLE STRATUM IDENTIFIER
182	Master Record		REGION
		23,228	1. Northeast
		29,149	2. Midwest
		38,048	3. South
		25,754	4. West
183	Master Record		GEOGRAPHIC DISTRIBUTION
			<u>MSA Size</u>
		50,349	1. 1,000,000 or more
		30,389	2. 250,000 - 999,999
		7,542	3. 100,000 - 249,999
		1,770	4. Under 100,000
		26,129	Blank. Non-MSA
184			BLANK
185	Master Record		TYPE OF PSU
		64,145	1. MSA - Self-representing
		25,905	3. MSA - Nonself-representing
		19	4. Non-MSA - Self-representing
		26,110	6. Non-MSA - Nonself-representing
186	Recode		MSA - NON-MSA RESIDENCE
		36,815	1. MSA - Central City
		53,235	2. MSA - Not Central City
		24,693	3. Non-MSA - Nonfarm
		1,436	4. Non-MSA - Farm
187-189			PSEUDO PSU CODES

NHIS PUBLIC USE TAPE RECORD
PERSON RECORD

Tape Locations	Item No.	Frequency	Items and Codes
190-200			CHRONIC CONDITION PREVALENCE AND INCIDENCE FACTOR (XX.XXXXXXXXX) - character format with implied decimal
			FINAL BASIC WEIGHT
201-209			<u>QUARTER</u>
210-218			<u>SEMI-ANNUAL (WT/2)</u>
219-227			<u>ANNUAL (WT/4)</u>
			6.5 WEIGHT
228-236			<u>QUARTER, SEMI-ANNUAL, AND ANNUAL</u>
			ESTIMATED RESTRICTED ACTIVITY DAYS IN PAST 2 WEEKS
237-245			<u>QUARTER, SEMI-ANNUAL AND ANNUAL</u>
			ESTIMATED BED DAYS IN PAST 2 WEEKS
246-254			<u>QUARTER, SEMI-ANNUAL AND ANNUAL</u>
			ESTIMATED WORK-LOSS DAYS IN PAST 2 WEEKS
255-263			<u>QUARTER, SEMI-ANNUAL AND ANNUAL</u>
			ESTIMATED SCHOOL-LOSS DAYS IN PAST 2 WEEKS
264-272			<u>QUARTER, SEMI-ANNUAL AND ANNUAL</u>
			ESTIMATED DOCTOR VISITS IN PAST 12 MONTHS
273-281			<u>QUARTER</u>
282-290			<u>SEMI-ANNUAL</u>
291-299			<u>ANNUAL</u>

NHIS PUBLIC USE TAPE RECORD
PERSON RECORD

Tape Locations	Item No.	Frequency	Items and Codes
ESTIMATED SHORT-STAY HOSPITAL EPISODE DAYS IN PAST 12 MONTHS			
300-308			<u>QUARTER</u>
309-317			<u>SEMI-ANNUAL</u>
318-326			<u>ANNUAL</u>
327-335			ANNUAL ESTIMATED NUMBER OF SHORT-STAY HOSPITAL EPISODES IN PAST 12 MONTHS

C O N D I T I O N R E C O R D

NOTES:

CONDITION FILE INCLUSIONS

The Condition file contains the following types of records:

1. Condition records, either acute or chronic, which are associated with disability days, doctor visits and/or hospitalizations in the two weeks preceding the interview (location 107=1 or 2 and 111-112=01-14 or 109=1).
2. Chronic condition records when the condition is reported to be the main or secondary cause of activity limitation (location 107=1 and 126=1 or 2) or limitation in ability to work.
3. Chronic condition records reported in response to a check list of conditions for each body system, e.g., digestive. The total sample was divided into six subsamples. Each subsample was asked the set of conditions corresponding to one of the six chronic disease check lists.

Use of Condition Records

NHIS condition records can be used to calculate aggregate estimates and rates of the incidence of acute conditions (Recode A), prevalence of selected chronic conditions (Recode C), disability days and utilization associated with acute or chronic conditions, and chronic conditions causing limitation of activity. Explanations of the procedures used to calculate these figures and rates are given below as well as restrictions due to content and reliability factors.

Included below is a list of special codes in ICD format and tape location created by NHIS as well as a list of ICD codes not used by NHIS.

NHIS Created Codes

The codes listed below are ICD-like codes with meanings specific to NHIS. These codes and the Impairment X-codes (see Medical Coding Manual for complete list of X-codes) are found in the ICD column locations of the Condition and Doctor Visit Records. The X of the Impairment Codes (represented by a hyphen '-') is in the first of the four columns.

<u>NHIS Code</u>	<u>Category Title</u>
019	Tuberculosis, arrested or inactive Psychic factors associated with diseases classified elsewhere in specified system:
316.0	Musculoskeletal
316.1	Respiratory
316.2	Cardiovascular
316.3	Skin

316.4	Gastrointestinal
316.5	Genitourinary
316.6	Endocrine
316.7	Organs of special sense
316.8	Other
316.9	Unspecified
399	Rheumatic fever, inactive
477.7	Allergies with multiple causes
693.2	Skin allergies with multiple causes
799.5	Observation with no condition found

Codes Not Used by NHIS

These ICD codes are not specifically used by NHIS. They are usually included in the categories specified:

<u>Unused ICD</u>	<u>Coded To:</u>
009.1	558
009.3	558
042-044	799.9
137-139	Impairment, as appropriate
230-234	Not applicable (not reported in NHIS)
235-238	Benign, malignant or unspecified, by site
268.1	Not applicable (not reported in NHIS)
306.0,6,7,8,9	Code as if non-psychogenic
315.0-2	X14
317-319	X19
326	Code residual effect to appropriate impairment or ICD 320-325
331.3,4	X93
342	X41

343	X50
344.0,2-6,8,9	Less than 3 months, see Medical Coding Manual, Appendix III If greater than 3 months, code as impairment, by site and extent
353.5	X70-X79, by site
369	X00-X03, by severity and site
388.2	X05-X09, by severity and site
389	X05-X09, by severity and site
391	Usually 398.9 (see Short Index)
410-412	414
429.6	414
436	437
438	Appropriate impairment usually (see Medical Coding Manual, Appendix III)
520.0-2,5	X92
521.6	X92
524	X92
718.6	X85
728.2	X70-X79, by site
728.4	Orthopedic impairment, by site
728.6	X74
734	X77
735	X76
736	Impairment, by type, site and cause
737	X70
738	Impairment, by type, site and cause
740	Not applicable (not reported in NHIS)
741	X71.9

742.0,1,3	X93.9
743	Code to equivalent acquired diseases of the eye 744.0-3388.9 and/or appropriate impairment
	(see Appendix III)
744.5	X79.9
744.8,9	of face, coded to X90.9 of neck, coded to X79.9
749	X91.9
750.0,1	X11.9
753.0	X31.9
754.2	X70.9
754.3	X75.9
754.4	X76.9
754.5-7	X78.9 except flatfoot coded to X77
754.8	Appropriate impairment, by type and site
755	Appropriate impairment, by type and site
756.0-3	Appropriate impairment, by type and site
758.0	X19.9
759.7.9	X99.9
761.6	Not applicable
779.6	Not applicable (for fetus)
781.5	X74
783.1	278.0
798	Not applicable
871.3	X00-X03
885-887	Appropriate impairment, by site
895-897	Appropriate impairment, by site
905.6-8	X80-89, by site

905.9	X20-29, X35, by site
908.6	Code to effect
909.0,1,3,9	Code to effect
958	Code injury only
960-979	977.9
980.987	989.9

In addition, the NHIS does not use certain ICD codes, which are conditions known to be caused by other conditions. In the Ninth Revision of the ICD, some causal conditions are marked by a dagger and the resulting condition by an asterisk. NHIS codes the dagger and not the asterisk.

Acute Conditions

Annual incidence estimates can be calculated by the following:

1. Use acute condition records (107:2) and categories from Recode A (location 100-103).
2. Select those with onset in last two weeks (108:1)
3. Use 6.5 weight (228-236) for all four quarters of data.

Denominators for subdomain rates should be computed by summing the weights for the entire domain of interest.

When associated disability days such as annual bed days are needed, the weighted number of bed days in location 246-254 should be substituted for the 6.5 weight in 3 above).

For additional examples of calculating estimates associated with acute conditions, see the back of this document.

Chronic Conditions

Recode C is the list of selected chronic conditions for which NHIS calculates prevalence and associated disability and use data. We feel that the collection and coding procedures used do not justify any further breakdown of categories for purposes of estimating prevalence from our survey. These categories correspond to questions asked on the six chronic condition lists and therefore produce reliable estimates except where the numbers are small. In order to obtain NHIS prevalence estimates, use the Recode C categories following the Tape Layouts.

For chronic conditions not specified in the six lists, estimates do not reflect prevalence but may be useful in epidemiological investigations. For most of the non-list conditions only those resulting in limitation of activity, recent disability days, or doctor visits will be included.

Because chronic conditions-related estimates are made based on a one-sixth subsample, many estimates, especially for population subgroups, may not be statistically reliable.

The weights for the six subsamples have been adjusted to the Census population controls using the same age-sex-race cells as were used for the entire sample. The most accurate chronic condition aggregate estimates for population variables other than age, sex and race are achieved by multiplying rates calculated for the one-sixth subsample by the population estimate based on the total sample.

For example, to estimate the prevalence of hypertension in the population with income \$25,000+, the rate calculated using the entire circulatory system subsample and those in the sample with hypertensive disease should be multiplied times the population estimate from the entire NHIS sample in the \$25,000 income category.

In order to calculate annual prevalence estimates:

1. Use chronic condition records (107:1)
2. Select on the appropriate list number in tape Location 92
3. Select on specified codes in Location 104-106 (Recode C).
4. Multiply the chronic condition prevalence factor (Location 190-200 divided by 1,000,000,000 to adjust for the implied decimal) times the annual basic weight in location 219-227.

Rates should be calculated using the population estimates from the subsample as the denominator. Population estimates from the total sample also may be used as denominators; however, if rates are to be calculated for groups other than those defined by age, sex, and race, it may be preferable to use denominators based on the subsample.

In order to calculate associated disability days, doctor visits, etc., the specifications above should be used, substituting the appropriate weight for the basic weight factor in 4. For example, to calculate annual bed day estimates based on a two-week recall period, use the chronic condition factor multiplied by the weighted bed days in location 246-254.

Limitation of Activity due to Chronic Condition

To calculate limitation of activity due to chronic conditions on a condition basis, use the entire NHIS sample, rather than the one-sixth subsamples. NHIS recommends that Recode B (Location 97-99) be used to categorize the causal conditions.

Use of Recodes

Recode A - Recode categories for acute conditions. It contains the smallest categories considered reliable by NHIS for estimating acute conditions.

Recode B - The recommended recode for limitation of activity. It corresponds directly to Ninth Revision ICD categories.

Recode C - Recode categories for chronic conditions. It is used by NHIS for estimating prevalence of chronic conditions.

NHIS PUBLIC USE TAPE RECORDS
Outline of Items and Codes
Number of Records = 89,199
CONDITION RECORD

Tape Locations	Item No.	Frequency	Items and Codes
RECORD TYPE			
1-2	-	89,199	30. Condition Record
PROCESSING YEAR			
3-4	-	89,199	94. 1994
PROCESSING QUARTER			
5	-	21,131 23,475 21,951 22,642	1. Quarter 1 2. Quarter 2 3. Quarter 3 4. Quarter 4
6-8	HH-5	RANDOM RECODE OF PSU NUMBER	
9-10	HH-5	WEEK - CENSUS CODE*	
		01, 21, 41, 61, 81 ... Week 01 02, 22, 42, 62, 82 ... Week 02 03, 23, 43, 63, 83 ... Week 03 04, 24, 44, 64, 84 ... Week 04 05, 25, 45, 65, 85 ... Week 05 06, 26, 46, 66, 86 ... Week 06 07, 27, 47, 67, 87 ... Week 07 08, 28, 48, 68, 88 ... Week 08 09, 29, 49, 69, 89 ... Week 09 10, 30, 50, 70, 90 ... Week 10 11, 31, 51, 71, 91 ... Week 11 12, 32, 52, 72, 92 ... Week 12 13, 33, 53, 73, 93 ... Week 13	

*This code represents the initial week of assignment. The interview may be re-assigned for administrative purposes. See Locations 19-20 for the code which reflects the actual week assigned for conducting the interview.

NHIS PUBLIC USE TAPE RECORD
CONDITION RECORD

Tape Locations	Item No.	Frequency	Items and Codes
11-12	HH-5		SEGMENT NUMBER Week plus Segment Number identifies the segment
13-14	HH-5		HOUSEHOLD NUMBER Numbered within PSU-Week-Segment
15-16	-		PERSON NUMBER
17-18	-		CONDITION SERIAL NUMBER 01-99. Serial Number
19-20	HH-5		PROCESSING WEEK CODE (Numbered within Quarter) 5,248 01. Week 01 7,451 02. Week 02 7,263 03. Week 03 6,805 04. Week 04 7,026 05. Week 05 6,766 06. Week 06 7,046 07. Week 07 6,957 08. Week 08 6,617 09. Week 09 6,989 10. Week 10 7,031 11. Week 11 6,988 12. Week 12 7,012 13. Week 13
21	Recode		LATE INTERVIEW (OR LAST ATTEMPT) FLAG 54,389 0. Interview not late 25,087 1. One week late 7,720 2. Two weeks late 2,003 3. Unknown

NHIS PUBLIC USE TAPE RECORD
CONDITION RECORD

Tape Locations	Item No.	Frequency	Items and Codes																												
22-23	HH-10c,d		<p>TYPE OF LIVING QUARTERS:</p> <p><u>Housing Unit = (00-07)</u></p> <table><tbody><tr><td>1,740</td><td>00. Housing unit; kind unknown</td></tr><tr><td>81,255</td><td>01. House, apartment, flat</td></tr><tr><td>103</td><td>02. HU in nontransient hotel, motel, etc.</td></tr><tr><td>39</td><td>03. HU-permanent in transient hotel, motel, etc.</td></tr><tr><td>41</td><td>04. HU in rooming house</td></tr><tr><td>4,672</td><td>05. Mobile home or trailer with no permanent room added</td></tr><tr><td>725</td><td>06. Mobile home or trailer with one or more permanent rooms added</td></tr><tr><td>74</td><td>07. HU not specified above</td></tr></tbody></table> <p><u>Other Unit = (08-13)</u></p> <table><tbody><tr><td>34</td><td>08. Quarters not HU in rooming or boarding house</td></tr><tr><td>0</td><td>09. Unit not permanent in transient hotel, motel, etc.</td></tr><tr><td>13</td><td>10. Unoccupied site for mobile home, trailer, or tent</td></tr><tr><td>313</td><td>11. Student quarters in college dormitory</td></tr><tr><td>184</td><td>12. Other unit not specified above</td></tr><tr><td>6</td><td>13. Other unit; kind unknown</td></tr></tbody></table>	1,740	00. Housing unit; kind unknown	81,255	01. House, apartment, flat	103	02. HU in nontransient hotel, motel, etc.	39	03. HU-permanent in transient hotel, motel, etc.	41	04. HU in rooming house	4,672	05. Mobile home or trailer with no permanent room added	725	06. Mobile home or trailer with one or more permanent rooms added	74	07. HU not specified above	34	08. Quarters not HU in rooming or boarding house	0	09. Unit not permanent in transient hotel, motel, etc.	13	10. Unoccupied site for mobile home, trailer, or tent	313	11. Student quarters in college dormitory	184	12. Other unit not specified above	6	13. Other unit; kind unknown
1,740	00. Housing unit; kind unknown																														
81,255	01. House, apartment, flat																														
103	02. HU in nontransient hotel, motel, etc.																														
39	03. HU-permanent in transient hotel, motel, etc.																														
41	04. HU in rooming house																														
4,672	05. Mobile home or trailer with no permanent room added																														
725	06. Mobile home or trailer with one or more permanent rooms added																														
74	07. HU not specified above																														
34	08. Quarters not HU in rooming or boarding house																														
0	09. Unit not permanent in transient hotel, motel, etc.																														
13	10. Unoccupied site for mobile home, trailer, or tent																														
313	11. Student quarters in college dormitory																														
184	12. Other unit not specified above																														
6	13. Other unit; kind unknown																														
24	HH-11a		<p>HAS TELEPHONE</p> <table><tbody><tr><td>81,637</td><td>1. Yes, phone number given</td></tr><tr><td>2,917</td><td>2. Yes, no phone number given</td></tr><tr><td>3,973</td><td>3. No</td></tr><tr><td>672</td><td>4. Unknown</td></tr></tbody></table>	81,637	1. Yes, phone number given	2,917	2. Yes, no phone number given	3,973	3. No	672	4. Unknown																				
81,637	1. Yes, phone number given																														
2,917	2. Yes, no phone number given																														
3,973	3. No																														
672	4. Unknown																														
25	A-1		<p>SEX</p> <table><tbody><tr><td>37,134</td><td>1. Male</td></tr><tr><td>52,065</td><td>2. Female</td></tr></tbody></table>	37,134	1. Male	52,065	2. Female																								
37,134	1. Male																														
52,065	2. Female																														
26	-		<p>BLANK</p>																												

NHIS PUBLIC USE TAPE RECORD
CONDITION RECORD

Tape Locations	Item No.	Frequency	Items and Codes
27-28	Person Column		AGE
		574	00. Under 1 year
		88,598	01-98. Number of years
		27	99. 99+ years of age
29	Recode		AGE RECODE #1
		3,085	1. Under 5 years
		8,660	2. 5-17 years
		4,493	3. 18-24 years
		23,126	4. 25-44 years
		24,955	5. 45-64 years
		6,908	6. 65-69 years
		6,461	7. 70-74 years
		11,511	8. 75 years and over
30	Recode		AGE RECODE #2
		3,701	1. Under 6 years
		7,374	2. 6-16 years
		5,163	3. 17-24 years
		9,935	4. 25-34 years
		13,191	5. 35-44 years
		12,690	6. 45-54 years
		12,265	7. 55-64 years
		13,369	8. 65-74 years
		11,511	9. 75 years and over
31-32	Recode		AGE RECODE #3
		1,866	00-35. Months
		87,333	36. Over 3 years
33	-		BLANK

NHIS PUBLIC USE TAPE RECORD
CONDITION RECORD

Tape Locations	Item No.	Frequency	Items and Codes
<u>34-39</u>	A-3		MONTH AND YEAR OF BIRTH
34-35			MONTH 01. January 08. August 02. February 09. September 03. March 10. October 04. April 11. November 05. May 12. December 06. June 99. Unknown 07. July
36-39			YEAR OF BIRTH 1800-1899. 1800-1899 1900-1995. 1900-1995 9999. Unknown
40	Recode	88,474 725	HISPANIC ORIGIN IMPUTED FLAG 0. Hispanic Origin Known 1. Hispanic Origin Imputed from Reference Person
41-42	L-4		MAIN RACIAL BACKGROUND* (See notation for locations 43-45) 71,831 01. White 12,098 02. Black 1,025 03. Indian (American) 12 04. Eskimo 13 05. Aleut 294 06. Chinese 369 07. Filipino 33 08. Hawaiian 160 09. Korean 150 10. Vietnamese 246 11. Japanese 160 12. Asian Indian 4 13. Samoan 9 14. Guamanian 161 15. Other API 1,300 16. Other race 237 17. Multiple race 1,097 99. Unknown

* Some categories may be too small to analyze separately and therefore may produce unreliable estimates; in addition, counts may not agree with those produced by the Census Bureau.

NHIS PUBLIC USE TAPE RECORD
CONDITION RECORD

Tape Locations	Item No.	Frequency	Items and Codes
<u>43-45</u>	Recode		RACE RECODES
43			RECODE 1*
		74,275	1. White
		12,163	2. Black
		2,761	3. Other
44			RECODE 2
		74,275	1. White
		14,924	2. Non-white
45			RECODE 3
		12,163	1. Black
		77,036	2. Non-black
			Persons whose Main Racial Background (location 41-42) was "other" or "unknown" were classified in the following recodes by using the racial background observed by the interviewer.
			Use of these recodes is recommended for estimating statistics for the groups shown here.
<u>46-47</u>	L-3		HISPANIC ORIGIN**
		46	00. Multiple Hispanic
		1,098	01. Puerto Rican
		418	02. Cuban
		1,132	03. Mexican-Mexicano
		2,103	04. Mexican-American
		71	05. Chicano
		673	06. Other Latin American
		670	07. Other Spanish
		367	08. Spanish, DK type
		765	09. Unknown if Spanish origin
		81,856	10. Not Spanish origin
48	L-7		MARITAL STATUS
		9,009	0. Under 14 years
		44,942	1. Married - spouse in household
		781	2. Married - spouse not in household
		11,533	3. Widowed
		8,248	4. Divorced
		2,003	5. Separated
		12,242	6. Never married
		441	7. Unknown

*This recode is used to categorize race in the Current Estimates tables.

**If unknown, the family reference person code was imputed. A flag indicating imputation is in loc. 40 and the relationship to reference person is in loc. 63.

NHIS PUBLIC USE TAPE RECORD
CONDITION RECORD

Tape Locations	Item No.	Frequency	Items and Codes
49	L-1		<p>VETERAN STATUS</p> <p>62,933 1. Non-veteran 49 2. WW I 4,749 3. WW II 2,393 4. Korean War 3,098 5. Vietnam veteran 901 6. Post-Vietnam 1,855 7. Other service 292 8. Served in Armed Forces, unknown if war veteran 1,184 9. Unknown if served in Armed Forces 11,745 Blank. Under 18 years of age</p>
50	L-1		<p>ACTIVE GUARD/RESERVE STATUS FOR PERSONS ON ACTIVE DUTY IN ARMED FORCES</p> <p>62,933 0. Non-veteran 778 1. All service in Guard/Reserve 2,221 2. Some service in Guard/Reserve 30 3. Unknown if all service in Guard/Reserve 9,356 4. No active service in Guard/Reserve 2,136 5. Unknown if ever active member in Guard/Reserve or if served in Armed Forces 11,745 Blank. Under 18 years of age</p>

NHIS PUBLIC USE TAPE RECORD
CONDITION RECORD

Tape Locations	Item No.	Frequency	Items and Codes
51-52	L-2		EDUCATION OF INDIVIDUAL - COMPLETED YEARS
		1,976	00. Never attended; kindergarten only
		55,530	01-12. Grades 1-12
			<u>College:</u>
		5,306	13. 1 year
		6,730	14. 2 years
		2,659	15. 3 years
		6,866	16. 4 years
		1,826	17. 5 years
		3,944	18. 6 years or more
		1,277	19. Unknown
		3,085	Blank. Under 5 years of age
53	Recode		EDUCATION OF INDIVIDUAL RECODE
		1,976	0. None; kindergarten only
		15,731	1. 1-8 years (elementary)
		12,806	2. 9-11 years (high school)
		26,993	3. 12 years (high school graduate)
		14,695	4. 1-3 years (college)
		6,866	5. 4 years (college graduate)
		5,770	6. 5+ years (post-college)
		1,277	7. Unknown
		3,085	Blank. Under 5 years of age
54-55	-		HIGHEST EDUCATION OF RESPONSIBLE ADULT FAMILY MEMBER (Detail)
		193	00. Never attended; kindergarten only
		46,287	01-12. Grades 1-12
			<u>College:</u>
		6,918	13. 1 year
		9,736	14. 2 years
		3,849	15. 3 years
		10,976	16. 4 years
		3,083	17. 5 years
		7,398	18. 6 years or more
		759	19. Unknown

NHIS PUBLIC USE TAPE RECORD
CONDITION RECORD

Tape Locations	Item No.	Frequency	Items and Codes
56	-		HIGHEST EDUCATION OF RESPONSIBLE ADULT FAMILY MEMBER - Recode
		193	0. None; kindergarten only
		6,411	1. 1-8 years (elementary)
		9,544	2. 9-11 years (high school)
		30,332	3. 12 years (high school graduate)
		20,503	4. 1-3 years (college)
		10,976	5. 4 years (college graduate)
		10,481	6. 5+ years (post-college)
		759	7. Unknown
57	L-8		FAMILY INCOME \$20,000 OR MORE
		35,293	1. Less than \$20,000
		51,001	2. \$20,000 or more
		2,905	3. Unknown
58-59	L-8		FAMILY INCOME
		490	00. Less than \$ 1,000
		588	01. \$ 1,000 - \$ 1,999
		708	02. 2,000 - 2,999
		747	03. 3,000 - 3,999
		1,098	04. 4,000 - 4,999
		1,929	05. 5,000 - 5,999
		1,761	06. 6,000 - 6,999
		2,175	07. 7,000 - 7,999
		1,755	08. 8,000 - 8,999
		1,848	09. 9,000 - 9,999
		2,141	10. 10,000 - 10,999
		1,273	11. 11,000 - 11,999
		2,382	12. 12,000 - 12,999
		1,450	13. 13,000 - 13,999
		1,444	14. 14,000 - 14,999
		1,554	15. 15,000 - 15,999
		1,350	16. 16,000 - 16,999
		1,282	17. 17,000 - 17,999
		1,487	18. 18,000 - 18,999
		1,909	19. 19,000 - 19,999
		7,456	20. 20,000 - 24,999
		5,561	21. 25,000 - 29,999
		5,575	22. 30,000 - 34,999
		4,398	23. 35,000 - 39,999
		4,180	24. 40,000 - 44,999
		3,404	25. 45,000 - 49,999
		15,213	26. \$50,000 and over
		14,041	27. Unknown

NHIS PUBLIC USE TAPE RECORD
CONDITION RECORD

Tape Locations	Item No.	Frequency	Items and Codes
60	Recode		FAMILY INCOME RECODE
		3,631	0. Under \$5,000
		3,690	1. \$ 5,000 - \$ 6,999
		5,778	2. 7,000 - 9,999
		8,690	3. 10,000 - 14,999
		7,582	4. 15,000 - 19,999
		7,456	5. 20,000 - 24,999
		11,136	6. 25,000 - 34,999
		11,982	7. 35,000 - 49,999
		15,213	8. \$50,000 or more
		14,041	9. Unknown
61	Generated		NHIS POVERTY INDEX*
		67,126	1. Above poverty threshold
		13,213	2. Below poverty threshold
		8,860	3. Unknown
62-63			FAMILY RELATIONSHIP
62	A-2		<u>TYPE OF FAMILY</u>
		17,726	&. Primary individual
		951	-. Secondary individual
		70,413	0. Primary family
		109	1-9. Secondary family
63	A-2		<u>RELATIONSHIP TO REFERENCE PERSON</u>
		17,116	&. Reference person, living alone
		31,778	0. Reference person, 2+ persons in household
		21,920	1. Spouse, other spouse NOT in Armed Forces and living at home
		210	2. Spouse, other spouse IN Armed Forces and living at home
		14,499	3. Child of reference person or spouse
		787	4. Grandchild of reference person or spouse
		1,535	5. Parent of reference person or spouse
		1,336	6. Other relative
		18	7. Child of ineligible reference person
		0	9. Unknown

* Based on family size, number of children under 18 years of age & family income using the 1993 poverty levels derived from the August, 1994 Current Population Survey.

NHIS PUBLIC USE TAPE RECORD
CONDITION RECORD

Tape Locations	Item No.	Frequency	Items and Codes
64	Recode		FAMILY RELATIONSHIP RECODE
		17,116 1,561 44,920 25,602	1. Living alone 2. Living only with non-relative 3. Living with spouse 4. Living with relative - other
65-66	Generated		SIZE OF FAMILY* Unrelated individuals are coded 01
67	Generated		SIZE OF FAMILY RECODE
			1-8. Number of members 9. 9+ members
68	A-2		PARENT/OTHER ADULT RELATIVE (under 25 years and never married)
		8,557 2,963 203 764 618 59 195 217 178 1,050 74,395	1. Both parents, no other relative 2. Mother only 3. Father only 4. Both parents and other 21+ year old adult relative 5. Mother and other 21+ year old adult relative 6. Father and other 21+ year old adult relative 7. No parent, but one 21+ year old adult relative 8. No parent, but two or more 21+ year old adult relatives 9. Unknown 0. Other Blank. Not applicable (25+ years old or ever married)
69	B-1 B-8		MAJOR ACTIVITY (18+ years old)
		31,942 19,117 2,664 22,889 842 11,745	1. Working 2. Keeping house 3. Going to school 4. Something else 5. Unknown Blank. Not applicable (Under 18 years)

*Count includes spouse in military but living at home.

NHIS PUBLIC USE TAPE RECORD
CONDITION RECORD

Tape Locations	Item No.	Frequency	Items and Codes
70	G-4		HEALTH STATUS
		14,422	1. Excellent
		19,174	2. Very Good
		25,380	3. Good
		17,600	4. Fair
		12,055	5. Poor
		568	6. Unknown
71	Recode		ACTIVITY LIMITATION STATUS - (all ages)*
		16,880	1. Unable to perform major activity
		16,781	2. Limited in kind/amount major activity
		12,887	3. Limited in other activities
		42,651	4. Not limited (includes unknowns)
72	Recode		ACTIVITY LIMITATION STATUS MEASURED BY "ABILITY TO WORK" (18-69 years)
		15,927	1. Unable to work
		8,491	2. Limited in kind/amount of work
		6,117	3. Limited in other activities
		28,925	4. Not limited (includes unknowns)
		29,717	Blank. Not applicable (under 18 years, 70+ years)
73	B-11		LIMITATION OF SCHOOL ACTIVITIES (5-17 years)
		330	1. Unable to attend school
		1,518	2. Attends special school/classes
		199	3. Needs special school/classes
		431	4. Limited in school attendance
		785	5. Limited in other activities
		5,397	6. Not limited (includes unknowns)
		80,539	Blank. Not applicable (under 5 years or 18+ years)

*This recode is used to categorize persons with limitation of activity in the Current Estimates tables.

NHIS PUBLIC USE TAPE RECORD
CONDITION RECORD

Tape Locations	Item No.	Frequency	Items and Codes
74	B-14		NEEDS HELP WITH PERSONAL CARE (5-59 years old and limited, or age 60-69 years)* 2,702 1. Unable to perform personal needs 5,171 2. Limited in performing other routine needs 29,931 3. Not limited in performing personal or routine needs 23 4. Unknown 51,372 Blank. Not applicable (under 5 years; 5-59 years not limited; 70+ years old)
75	D-1		EMPLOYMENT STATUS IN PAST 2 WEEKS (18+years) <u>In the Labor Force:</u> (1-7) <u>Currently Employed:</u> (1-3) 32,272 1. Worked in past 2 weeks 1,310 2. Did not work, has job; not on lay-off and not looking for work 26 3. Did not work, has job; looking for work <u>Unemployed:</u> (4-7) 120 4. Did not work, has job; on lay-off 8 5. Did not work, has job; on lay-off and looking for work 313 6. Did not work, has job; unknown if looking or on lay-off 1,543 7. Did not work, has no job; looking for work or on lay-off <u>Not in Labor Force (18+ years):</u> (8) 41,862 8. Not in Labor Force (18+ years) 11,745 Blank. Not applicable (Under 18 years old)

*For persons 70+ years, codes 1 and 2 in loc. 71 correspond to codes 1 and 2 in loc. 74.

NHIS PUBLIC USE TAPE RECORD
CONDITION RECORD

Tape Locations	Item No.	Frequency	Items and Codes
76	L-6		CLASS OF WORKER
		41,862	0. Not in labor force
		23,975	1. Private company
		1,185	2. Federal Government employee
		1,808	3. State Government employee
		3,107	4. Local Government employee
		933	5. Incorporated business
		3,702	6. Self-employed
		72	7. Without pay
		55	8. Never worked
		755	9. Unknown
		11,745	Blank. Under 18
77-79	L-6		INDUSTRY DETAIL CODE
		35,592	010-998. Code number
		53,607	Blank. Not applicable
80-81	Recode		INDUSTRY RECODE 1
			SEE APPENDIX B
82-83	Recode		INDUSTRY RECODE 2
			SEE APPENDIX B
84-86	L-6		OCCUPATION DETAIL CODE
		35,592	001-998. Code number
		53,607	Blank. Not applicable
87-88	Recode		OCCUPATION RECODE 1
			SEE APPENDIX C
89-90	Recode		OCCUPATION RECODE 2
			SEE APPENDIX C

NHIS PUBLIC USE TAPE RECORD
CONDITION RECORD

Tape Locations	Item No.	Frequency	Items and Codes
91	L-R		RESPONDENT
		57,311 5,092 26,076 720	1. Self-entirely 2. Self-partly 3. Proxy 4. Unknown
92	Recode		CONDITION LIST ASSIGNED AND ASKED
		17,083 15,453 12,216 13,552 14,108 16,143 644	1. Condition List 1, Skin and musculo-skeletal 2. Condition List 2, Impairments 3. Condition List 3, Digestive 4. Condition List 4, Miscellaneous 5. Condition List 5, Circulatory 6. Condition List 6, Respiratory 7. Unknown
93-96	K-3		ICD/NHIS CODE (DIAGNOSTIC CODE) (See ICD-9 rubric and NHIS Medical Coding Manual, Part III of documentation)
97-99	Recode		CONDITION RECODE (B) (ICD Recode, modified for NHIS) (See Diagnostic Recodes Section)
100-103	Recode		ACUTE RECODE (A) (See Diagnostic Recodes Section)
104-106	Recode		CHRONIC RECODE (C) (See Diagnostic Recodes Section)

NHIS PUBLIC USE TAPE RECORD
CONDITION RECORD

Tape Locations	Item No.	Frequency	Items and Codes
107	K-3		CHRONIC/ACUTE CODE
		76,836 12,363	1. Chronic 2. Acute
108	K-5		ONSET
		8,169 5,959 10,155 21,896 43,020	1. During the past 2 weeks 2. Over 2 weeks to 3 months 3. Over 3 months to 12 months 4. Over 1 year to 5 years 5. Over 5 years
109	K-2		DOCTOR LAST SEEN FOR THIS CONDITION
		376 23,436 26,754 9,301 5,966 5,471 5,582 1,527 1,342 9,444	0. Interview week 1. 2-week reference period 2. Over 2 weeks, less than 6 months 3. 6 months, less than 1 year 4. 1 year, less than 2 years 5. 2 years, less than 5 years 6. 5 years or more 7. Doctor seen, DK when 8. DK if doctor seen 9. Doctor never seen
110	Recode		DOCTOR EVER SEEN FOR THIS CONDITION
		79,755 9,444	1. Yes 2. No
111-112	K-6		TOTAL RESTRICTED ACTIVITY DAYS IN PAST 2 WEEKS FOR THIS CONDITION
		73,291 15,908	00. None 01-14. 1-14 days
113-114	K-7		BED DAYS IN PAST 2 WEEKS FOR THIS CONDITION
		80,837 8,362	00. None 01-14. 1-14 days

NHIS PUBLIC USE TAPE RECORD
CONDITION RECORD

Tape Locations	Item No.	Frequency	Items and Codes
115-116	K-8		WORK-LOSS DAYS IN PAST 2 WEEKS FOR THIS CONDITION (control on Currently Employed, 75:1-3)
		85,969	00. None
		3,230	01-14. 1-14 days
117-118	K-9		SCHOOL-LOSS DAYS IN PAST 2 WEEKS FOR THIS CONDITION
		87,405	00. None
		1,794	01-14. 1-14 days
119-121	K-10		BED DAYS IN PAST 12 MONTHS FOR THIS CONDITION*
		34,995	000. None
		5,769	001-365. Days
		36,072	366. Unknown/not a "check-list" condition
		12,363	Blank. Not a chronic condition
122	K-11		EVER HOSPITALIZED FOR THIS CONDITION*
		6,947	1. Yes
		34,445	2. No
		35,444	3. Unknown/not a "check-list" condition
		12,363	Blank. Not a chronic condition
123	K-12		CONDITION STATUS*
		34,854	1. Still has condition
		898	2. Condition cured
		3,518	3. Condition under control
		326	4. Other
		37,240	5. Unknown status/not a "check-list" condition
		12,363	Blank. Not a chronic condition

*Use only for check-list conditions.

NHIS PUBLIC USE TAPE RECORD
CONDITION RECORD

Tape Locations	Item No.	Frequency	Items and Codes
124	K-12		LENGTH OF TIME HAD CONDITION BEFORE CURED* (Location 123 coded 2)
		48	0. Less than 1 month
		99	1. 1-3 months
		155	2. Over 3 to 6 months
		37	3. Over 6 to 12 months
		96	4. 1 year
		115	5. 2-4 years
		66	6. 5-9 years
		68	7. 10 years or more
		214	8. Unknown
		88,301	Blank. Not applicable/not a chronic condition
125	K-12		CONDITION PRESENT IN PAST 12 MONTHS*
		38,913	1. Yes
		223	2. No
		37,700	3. Unknown/not a "check-list" condition
		12,363	Blank. Not a chronic condition
126	Recode		CONDITION CAUSES ACTIVITY LIMITATION (all ages) (Refer to loc. 71 in all records except household for activity limitation status.)
		17,963	1. Limited, this condition main cause of limitation
		11,088	2. Limited, this condition secondary cause of limitation
		17,497	3. Limited, but not caused by this condition
		42,651	4. Not limited

*Use only for check-list conditions.

NHIS PUBLIC USE TAPE RECORD
CONDITION RECORD

Tape Locations	Item No.	Frequency	Items and Codes
127	Recode		CONDITION CAUSES LIMITATION IN ABILITY TO WORK (for all persons 18-69 years of age)
		8,961	1. Limited in work, this condition main cause of this limitation
		5,714	2. Limited in work, this condition secondary cause of this limitation
		9,743	3. Limited in work but not caused by this condition
		35,064	4. Not limited in work
		29,717	Blank. Not applicable
128	-		ALL INJURIES*
		10,434	1. First
		1,289	2. Not first
		77,476	Blank. Not an injury
129	Recode		IS INJURY ADVERSE REACTION OR COMPLICATION OF MEDICAL CARE
		79	1. Yes, adverse reaction**
		511	2. Yes, complication of medical care (therapeutic misadventure)**
		11,133	3. No, other injury
		77,476	Blank. Not an injury

*Includes all conditions reported as caused by an accident or injury, conditions with ICD codes 800-999 and impairments (X-codes) due to a accidents or injuries.

**Locations 130-134 are coded 'Unknown' for these injuries.
Most adverse reactions and therapeutic misadventures were not originally classified as an accident or injury and have been given the 'unspecified' E-code (E0009) in locs. 140-144 in accordance with ICDA guidelines; most will also have the place code of '9' (unspecified) in loc. 145.

NHIS PUBLIC USE TAPE RECORD
CONDITION RECORD

Tape Locations	Item No.	Frequency	Items and Codes
130	K-14		PLACE OF ACCIDENT
		1,108	1. At home (inside house)
		1,104	2. At home (adjacent premises)
		2,837	3. Street and highway (including roadway and public sidewalks)
		164	4. Farm
		1,958	5. Industrial place (including premises)
		501	6. School (including premises)
		676	7. Place of recreation and sports, except school
		1,448	8. Other
		1,927	9. Unknown
		77,476	Blank. Not an injury
131	K-15		AT WORK AT TIME OF ACCIDENT
		2,875	1. Yes
		4,886	2. No
		1,561	3. Not applicable, under 18 at time of accident
		383	4. Not applicable, in Armed Forces
		2,018	5. Unknown
		77,476	Blank. Not an injury
132	K-16		MOTOR VEHICLE INVOLVED
		2,923	1. Yes
		7,379	2. No
		1,421	3. Unknown
		77,476	Blank. Not an injury
133	K-16		NUMBER OF VEHICLES INVOLVED
		1,823	1. One
		1,046	2. Two or more
		54	3. Unknown
		86,276	Blank. Not an injury/no or unknown if motor vehicle involved

NHIS PUBLIC USE TAPE RECORD
CONDITION RECORD

Tape Locations	Item No.	Frequency	Items and Codes
134	K-16		MOVING MOTOR VEHICLE INVOLVED
		2,520	1. Yes
		324	2. No
		79	3. Unknown
		86,276	Blank. Not an injury/no or unknown if motor vehicle involved
135-137	Recode		CLASS OF ACCIDENT
		10,750	111-322.
		383	400. SEE APPENDIX D
		511	500.
		79	600.
		77,476	Blank. Not an injury
138	Recode		SELECTED FIRST INJURY*
		8,212	1. First
		670	2. Not first
		80,317	Blank. Not a selected injury
139	Recode		CONDITION CAUSES PERSONAL CARE ACTIVITY LIMITATION (5-59 years old and limited, or age 60-69 years)
		2,300	1. Limited, condition main cause of limitation
		1,245	2. Limited, condition secondary cause of limitation
		4,328	3. Limited, but not caused by this condition
		29,954	4. Not limited
		51,372	Blank. Not applicable (under 5 years, 5-59 years not limited, 70+ years old)

*Limited to conditions with ICD codes 800-999 and impairments (X-codes due to accidents or injuries.

NHIS PUBLIC USE TAPE RECORD
CONDITION RECORD

Tape Locations	Item No.	Frequency	Items and Codes
140-144	Recode		EXTERNAL CAUSE OF INJURY*
		1,757	E0009. (NHIS code for unspecified cause) **
		9,966	E800-E998. ICD-9 External Causes of Injury (E-Code) (with 5th digit in range ICD-9 for some categories)
		77,476	Blank. Not an injury
145	Recode		ICD-9 (E-CODE) PLACE OF OCCURRENCE
		2,249	0. Home
		177	1. Farm
		3	2. Mine and quarry
		1,945	3. Industrial place and premises
		697	4. Place for recreation and sports
		2,846	5. Street and highway
		828	6. Public building
		146	7. Residential institution
		948	8. Other specified places
		1,884	9. Unspecified place, Unknown
		77,476	Blank. Not an injury
146-177	-		BLANK
178	Master Record		TYPE OF SUBSTRATUM
		12,366	0. Permit
		8,241	1. Area, oversampled for blacks
		68,592	2. Area, not oversampled for blacks
179-181	-		FULL SAMPLE STRATUM IDENTIFIER

*Includes all listed E-codes except late effects (929, 959, 969, 977, 989, 999), and death (978). In addition, NHIS added '9' (Unknown) to the 4th digit of those E-Codes without an 'Other or unspecified' category (854, 881, 944 and 951).

**Many of the 'unspecified' E-codes (E0009) in locs. 140-144 are due to adverse reactions and therapeutic misadventures (loc. 129) and most of these will also receive a '9' (unspecified) as a place code in loc. 145.

NHIS PUBLIC USE TAPE RECORD
CONDITION RECORD

Tape Locations	Item No.	Frequency	Items and Codes
182	Master Record		REGION
		16,569	1. Northeast
		22,404	2. Midwest
		30,863	3. South
		19,363	4. West
183	Master Record		GEOGRAPHIC DISTRIBUTION
			<u>MSA Size</u>
		35,810	1. 1,000,000 or more
		23,827	2. 250,000 - 999,999
		5,672	3. 100,000 - 249,999
		1,461	4. Under 100,000
		22,429	Blank. Non-MSA
184	-		BLANK
185	Master Record		TYPE OF PSU
		45,807	1. MSA - Self-representing
		20,963	3. MSA - Nonself-representing
		17	4. Non-MSA - Self-representing
		22,412	6. Non-MSA - Nonself-representing
186	Recode		MSA - NON-MSA RESIDENCE
		28,631	1. MSA - Central City
		38,139	2. MSA - Not Central City
		21,424	3. Non-MSA - Nonfarm
		1,005	4. Non-MSA - Farm
187-189			PSEUDO PSU CODES
190-200			CHRONIC CONDITION PREVALENCE AND INCIDENCE FACTOR (XX.XXXXXXXXX) - character format with implied decimal

NHIS PUBLIC USE TAPE RECORD
CONDITION RECORD

Tape Locations	Item No.	Frequency	Items and Codes
FINAL BASIC WEIGHT			
201-209			<u>QUARTER</u>
210-218			<u>SEMI-ANNUAL (WT/2)</u>
219-227			<u>ANNUAL (WT/4)</u>
6.5 WEIGHT			
228-236			<u>QUARTER, SEMI-ANNUAL AND ANNUAL</u>
ESTIMATED RESTRICTED ACTIVITY DAYS IN PAST 2 WEEKS			
237-245			<u>QUARTER, SEMI-ANNUAL AND ANNUAL</u>
ESTIMATED BED DAYS IN PAST 2 WEEKS			
246-254			<u>QUARTER, SEMI-ANNUAL AND ANNUAL</u>
ESTIMATED WORK-LOSS IN PAST 2 WEEKS			
255-263			<u>QUARTER, SEMI-ANNUAL AND ANNUAL</u>
ESTIMATED SCHOOL-LOSS DAYS IN PAST 2 WEEKS			
264-272			<u>QUARTER, SEMI-ANNUAL AND ANNUAL</u>
ESTIMATED BED DAYS IN PAST 12 MONTHS			
273-281			<u>QUARTER</u>
282-290			<u>SEMI-ANNUAL</u>
291-299			<u>ANNUAL</u>
300-335			BLANK

D O C T O R V I S I T R E C O R D

NOTES:

NHIS PUBLIC USE TAPE RECORDS
Outline of Items and Codes
Number of Records = 27,366
DOCTOR VISIT RECORD

Tape Locations	Item No.	Frequency	Items and Codes
RECORD TYPE			
1-2	-	27,366	40. Two-week Doctor Visit Record
PROCESSING YEAR			
3-4	-	27,366	94. 1994
PROCESSING QUARTER			
5	-	6,490	1. Quarter 1
		6,934	2. Quarter 2
		6,917	3. Quarter 3
		7,025	4. Quarter 4
RANDOM RECODE OF PSU NUMBER			
6-8	HH-5		
9-10	HH-5		WEEK - CENSUS CODE*
		01, 21, 41, 61, 81	... Week 01
		02, 22, 42, 62, 82	... Week 02
		03, 23, 43, 63, 83	... Week 03
		04, 24, 44, 64, 84	... Week 04
		05, 25, 45, 65, 85	... Week 05
		06, 26, 46, 66, 86	... Week 06
		07, 27, 47, 67, 87	... Week 07
		08, 28, 48, 68, 88	... Week 08
		09, 29, 49, 69, 89	... Week 09
		10, 30, 50, 70, 90	... Week 10
		11, 31, 51, 71, 91	... Week 11
		12, 32, 52, 72, 92	... Week 12
		13, 33, 53, 73, 93	... Week 13

*This code represents the initial week of assignment. The interview may be re-assigned for administrative purposes. See Locations 19-20 for the code which reflects the actual week assigned for conducting the interview.

NHIS PUBLIC USE TAPE RECORD
DOCTOR VISIT RECORD

Tape Locations	Item No.	Frequency	Items and Codes
11-12	HH-5		SEGMENT NUMBER Week plus Segment Number identifies the segment
13-14	HH-5		HOUSEHOLD NUMBER Numbered within PSU-Week-Segment
15-16	-		PERSON NUMBER
17-18	-		DOCTOR VISIT SERIAL NUMBER 01-99. Serial Number
19-20	HH-5		PROCESSING WEEK CODE (Numbered within Quarter) 1,564 01. Week 01 2,258 02. Week 02 2,265 03. Week 03 2,113 04. Week 04 2,116 05. Week 05 2,055 06. Week 06 2,231 07. Week 07 2,204 08. Week 08 2,101 09. Week 09 2,171 10. Week 10 2,174 11. Week 11 1,974 12. Week 12 2,140 13. Week 13
21	Recode		LATE INTERVIEW (OR LAST ATTEMPT) FLAG 16,971 0. Interview not late 7,812 1. One week late 2,222 2. Two weeks late 361 3. Unknown

NHIS PUBLIC USE TAPE RECORD
DOCTOR VISIT RECORD

Tape Locations	Item No.	Frequency	Items and Codes																												
22-23	HH-10c,d		TYPE OF LIVING QUARTERS: <u>Housing Unit = (00-07)</u> <table> <tbody> <tr><td>570</td><td>00. Housing unit; kind unknown</td></tr> <tr><td>25,150</td><td>01. House, apartment, flat</td></tr> <tr><td>39</td><td>02. HU in nontransient hotel, motel, etc.</td></tr> <tr><td>6</td><td>03. HU-permanent in transient hotel, motel, etc.</td></tr> <tr><td>8</td><td>04. HU in rooming house</td></tr> <tr><td>1,220</td><td>05. Mobile home or trailer with no permanent room added</td></tr> <tr><td>206</td><td>06. Mobile home or trailer with one or more permanent rooms added</td></tr> <tr><td>19</td><td>07. HU not specified above</td></tr> </tbody> </table> <u>Other Unit = (08-13)</u> <table> <tbody> <tr><td>7</td><td>08. Quarters not HU in rooming or boarding house</td></tr> <tr><td>0</td><td>09. Unit not permanent in transient hotel, motel, etc.</td></tr> <tr><td>7</td><td>10. Unoccupied site for mobile home, trailer, or tent</td></tr> <tr><td>88</td><td>11. Student quarters in college dormitory</td></tr> <tr><td>46</td><td>12. Other unit not specified above</td></tr> <tr><td>0</td><td>13. Other unit; kind unknown</td></tr> </tbody> </table>	570	00. Housing unit; kind unknown	25,150	01. House, apartment, flat	39	02. HU in nontransient hotel, motel, etc.	6	03. HU-permanent in transient hotel, motel, etc.	8	04. HU in rooming house	1,220	05. Mobile home or trailer with no permanent room added	206	06. Mobile home or trailer with one or more permanent rooms added	19	07. HU not specified above	7	08. Quarters not HU in rooming or boarding house	0	09. Unit not permanent in transient hotel, motel, etc.	7	10. Unoccupied site for mobile home, trailer, or tent	88	11. Student quarters in college dormitory	46	12. Other unit not specified above	0	13. Other unit; kind unknown
570	00. Housing unit; kind unknown																														
25,150	01. House, apartment, flat																														
39	02. HU in nontransient hotel, motel, etc.																														
6	03. HU-permanent in transient hotel, motel, etc.																														
8	04. HU in rooming house																														
1,220	05. Mobile home or trailer with no permanent room added																														
206	06. Mobile home or trailer with one or more permanent rooms added																														
19	07. HU not specified above																														
7	08. Quarters not HU in rooming or boarding house																														
0	09. Unit not permanent in transient hotel, motel, etc.																														
7	10. Unoccupied site for mobile home, trailer, or tent																														
88	11. Student quarters in college dormitory																														
46	12. Other unit not specified above																														
0	13. Other unit; kind unknown																														
24	HH-11a		HAS TELEPHONE <table> <tbody> <tr><td>25,153</td><td>1. Yes, phone number given</td></tr> <tr><td>938</td><td>2. Yes, no phone number given</td></tr> <tr><td>1,021</td><td>3. No</td></tr> <tr><td>254</td><td>4. Unknown</td></tr> </tbody> </table>	25,153	1. Yes, phone number given	938	2. Yes, no phone number given	1,021	3. No	254	4. Unknown																				
25,153	1. Yes, phone number given																														
938	2. Yes, no phone number given																														
1,021	3. No																														
254	4. Unknown																														
25	A-1		SEX <table> <tbody> <tr><td>11,007</td><td>1. Male</td></tr> <tr><td>16,359</td><td>2. Female</td></tr> </tbody> </table>	11,007	1. Male	16,359	2. Female																								
11,007	1. Male																														
16,359	2. Female																														
26			BLANK																												

NHIS PUBLIC USE TAPE RECORD
DOCTOR VISIT RECORD

Tape Locations	Item No.	Frequency	Items and Codes
27-28	Person Column		AGE
		650	00. Under 1 year
		26,707	01-98. Number of years
		9	99. 99+ years of age
29	Recode		AGE RECODE #1
		2,332	1. Under 5 years
		3,061	2. 5-17 years
		1,520	3. 18-24 years
		7,562	4. 25-44 years
		6,545	5. 45-64 years
		1,765	6. 65-69 years
		1,655	7. 70-74 years
		2,926	8. 75 years and over
30	Recode		AGE RECODE #2
		2,630	1. Under 6 years
		2,567	2. 6-16 years
		1,716	3. 17-24 years
		3,495	4. 25-34 years
		4,067	5. 35-44 years
		3,471	6. 45-54 years
		3,074	7. 55-64 years
		3,420	8. 65-74 years
		2,926	9. 75 years and over
31-32	Recode		AGE RECODE #3
		1,630	00-35. Months
		25,736	36. Over 3 years
33	-		BLANK

NHIS PUBLIC USE TAPE RECORD
DOCTOR VISIT RECORD

Tape Locations	Item No.	Frequency	Items and Codes
<u>34-39</u>	A-3		MONTH AND YEAR OF BIRTH
34-35			MONTH
			01. January 02. February 03. March 04. April 05. May 06. June 07. July 08. August 09. September 10. October 11. November 12. December 99. Unknown
36-39			YEAR OF BIRTH
			1800-1899. 1800-1899 1900-1995. 1900-1995 9999. Unknown
40	Recode		HISPANIC ORIGIN IMPUTED FLAG
		27,029 337	0. Hispanic Origin Known 1. Hispanic Origin Imputed from Reference Person

NHIS PUBLIC USE TAPE RECORD
DOCTOR VISIT RECORD

Tape Locations	Item No.	Frequency	Items and Codes
41-42	L-4		MAIN RACIAL BACKGROUND* (See notation for locations 43-45)
		21,967	01. White
		3,601	02. Black
		304	03. Indian (American)
		3	04. Eskimo
		4	05. Aleut
		92	06. Chinese
		135	07. Filipino
		11	08. Hawaiian
		41	09. Korean
		39	10. Vietnamese
		83	11. Japanese
		52	12. Asian Indian
		0	13. Samoan
		6	14. Guamanian
		63	15. Other API
		429	16. Other race
		72	17. Multiple race
		464	99. Unknown
43-45	Recode		RACE RECODES
43			<u>RECODE 1**</u>
		22,888	1. White
		3,615	2. Black
		863	3. Other
44			<u>RECODE 2</u>
		22,888	1. White
		4,478	2. Non-white
45			<u>RECODE 3</u>
		3,615	1. Black
		23,751	2. Non-black

*Some categories may be too small to analyze separately and therefore may produce unreliable estimates; in addition, counts may not agree with those produced by the Census Bureau.

**This recode is used to categorize race in the Current Estimates tables.

NHIS PUBLIC USE TAPE RECORD
DOCTOR VISIT RECORD

Tape Locations	Item No.	Frequency	Items and Codes
46-47	L-3		HISPANIC ORIGIN*
		34	00. Multiple Hispanic
		281	01. Puerto Rican
		82	02. Cuban
		439	03. Mexican-Mexicano
		732	04. Mexican-American
		25	05. Chicano
		229	06. Other Latin American
		260	07. Other Spanish
		115	08. Spanish, DK type
		262	09. Unknown if Spanish origin
		24,907	10. Not Spanish origin
48	L-7		MARITAL STATUS
		4,476	0. Under 14 years
		13,241	1. Married - spouse in household
		223	2. Married - spouse not in household
		2,838	3. Widowed
		2,235	4. Divorced
		539	5. Separated
		3,627	6. Never married
		187	7. Unknown
49	L-1		VETERAN STATUS
		17,863	1. Non-veteran
		7	2. WW I
		1,313	3. WW II
		580	4. Korean War
		868	5. Vietnam veteran
		282	6. Post-Vietnam
		560	7. Other service
		90	8. Served in Armed Forces, unknown if war veteran
		410	9. Unknown if served in Armed Forces
		5,393	Blank. Under 18 years of age

*If unknown, the family reference person code was imputed. A flag indicating imputation is in loc. 40 and the relationship to reference person is in loc. 63.

NHIS PUBLIC USE TAPE RECORD
DOCTOR VISIT RECORD

Tape Locations	Item No.	Frequency	Items and Codes
50	L-1		ACTIVE GUARD/RESERVE STATUS FOR PERSONS ON ACTIVE DUTY IN ARMED FORCES
		17,863	0. Non-veteran
		241	1. All service in Guard/Reserve
		591	2. Some service in Guard/Reserve
		6	3. Unknown if all service in Guard/Reserve
		2,573	4. No active service in Guard/Reserve
		699	5. Unknown if ever active member in Guard/Reserve or if served in Armed Forces
		5,393	Blank. Under 18 years of age
51-52	L-2		EDUCATION OF INDIVIDUAL - COMPLETED YEARS
		749	00. Never attended; kindergarten only
		15,039	01-12. Grades 1-12
			<u>College:</u>
		1,609	13. 1 year
		2,067	14. 2 years
		854	15. 3 years
		2,373	16. 4 years
		597	17. 5 years
		1,338	18. 6 years or more
		408	19. Unknown
		2,332	Blank. Under 5 years of age
53	Recode		EDUCATION OF INDIVIDUAL RECODE
		749	0. None; kindergarten only
		3,983	1. 1-8 years (elementary)
		3,336	2. 9-11 years (high school)
		7,720	3. 12 years (high school graduate)
		4,530	4. 1-3 years (college)
		2,373	5. 4 years (college graduate)
		1,935	6. 5+ years (post-college)
		408	7. Unknown
		2,332	Blank. Under 5 years of age

NHIS PUBLIC USE TAPE RECORD
DOCTOR VISIT RECORD

Tape Locations	Item No.	Frequency	Items and Codes
54-55	-		HIGHEST EDUCATION OF RESPONSIBLE ADULT FAMILY MEMBER (Detail)
	45	00.	Never attended; kindergarten only
	12,733	01-12.	Grades 1-12
			<u>College:</u>
	2,158	13.	1 year
	3,081	14.	2 years
	1,241	15.	3 years
	4,076	16.	4 years
	1,042	17.	5 years
	2,714	18.	6 years or more
	276	19.	Unknown
56	-		HIGHEST EDUCATION OF RESPONSIBLE ADULT FAMILY MEMBER - Recode
	45	0.	None; kindergarten only
	1,390	1.	1-8 years (elementary)
	2,498	2.	9-11 years (high school)
	8,845	3.	12 years (high school graduate)
	6,480	4.	1-3 years (college)
	4,076	5.	4 years (college graduate)
	3,756	6.	5+ years (post-college)
	276	7.	Unknown
57	L-8		FAMILY INCOME \$20,000 OR MORE
	9,475	1.	Less than \$20,000
	16,956	2.	\$20,000 or more
	935	3.	Unknown

NHIS PUBLIC USE TAPE RECORD
DOCTOR VISIT RECORD

Tape Locations	Item No.	Frequency	Items and Codes
58-59	L-8		<p style="text-align: center;">FAMILY INCOME</p> <p>124 00. Less than \$1,000 133 01. \$ 1,000 - \$ 1,999 178 02. 2,000 - 2,999 190 03. 3,000 - 3,999 333 04. 4,000 - 4,999 511 05. 5,000 - 5,999 529 06. 6,000 - 6,999 505 07. 7,000 - 7,999 453 08. 8,000 - 8,999 463 09. 9,000 - 9,999 581 10. 10,000 - 10,999 318 11. 11,000 - 11,999 623 12. 12,000 - 12,999 400 13. 13,000 - 13,999 398 14. 14,000 - 14,999 476 15. 15,000 - 15,999 307 16. 16,000 - 16,999 382 17. 17,000 - 17,999 429 18. 18,000 - 18,999 565 19. 19,000 - 19,999 2,134 20. 20,000 - 24,999 1,736 21. 25,000 - 29,999 1,710 22. 30,000 - 34,999 1,556 23. 35,000 - 39,999 1,349 24. 40,000 - 44,999 1,204 25. 45,000 - 49,999 5,691 26. \$50,000 and over 4,088 27. Unknown</p>
60	Recode		<p style="text-align: center;">FAMILY INCOME RECODE</p> <p>958 0. Under \$5,000 1,040 1. \$ 5,000 - \$ 6,999 1,421 2. 7,000 - 9,999 2,320 3. 10,000 - 14,999 2,159 4. 15,000 - 19,999 2,134 5. 20,000 - 24,999 3,446 6. 25,000 - 34,999 4,109 7. 35,000 - 49,999 5,691 8. \$50,000 or more 4,088 9. Unknown</p>

NHIS PUBLIC USE TAPE RECORD
DOCTOR VISIT RECORD

Tape Locations	Item No.	Frequency	Items and Codes
61	Generated		NHIS POVERTY INDEX*
		21,059	1. Above poverty threshold
		3,781	2. Below poverty threshold
		2,526	3. Unknown
<u>62-63</u>			FAMILY RELATIONSHIP
62	A-2		TYPE OF FAMILY
		4,588	&. Primary individual
		255	-. Secondary individual
		22,487	0. Primary family
		36	1-9. Secondary family
63	A-2		RELATIONSHIP TO REFERENCE PERSON
		4,395	&. Reference person, living alone
		8,914	0. Reference person, 2+ persons in household
		6,837	1. Spouse, other spouse NOT in Armed Forces and living at home
		89	2. Spouse, other spouse IN Armed Forces and living at home
		5,902	3. Child of reference person or spouse
		419	4. Grandchild of reference person or spouse
		370	5. Parent of reference person or spouse
		434	6. Other relative
		6	7. Child of ineligible reference person
		0	9. Unknown
64	Recode		FAMILY RELATIONSHIP RECODE
		4,395	1. Living alone
		448	2. Living only with non-relative
		13,236	3. Living with spouse
		9,287	4. Living with relative - other

*Based on family size, number of children under 18 years of age and family income using the 1993 poverty levels derived from the August, 1994 Current Population Survey.

NHIS PUBLIC USE TAPE RECORD
DOCTOR VISIT RECORD

Tape Locations	Item No.	Frequency	Items and Codes
65-66	Generated		SIZE OF FAMILY* Unrelated individuals are coded 01
67	Generated		SIZE OF FAMILY RECODE 1-8. Number of members 9. 9+ members
68	A-2		PARENT/OTHER ADULT RELATIVE (under 25 years old and never married) 3,935 1. Both parents, no other relative 1,063 2. Mother only 58 3. Father only 354 4. Both parents and other 21+ year old adult relative 334 5. Mother and other 21+ year old adult relative 24 6. Father and other 21+ year old adult relative 83 7. No parent, but one 21+ year old adult relative 75 8. No parent, but two or more 21+ year old adult relatives 69 9. Unknown 352 0. Other 21,019 Blank. Not applicable (25+ years old or ever married)
69	B-1 B-8		MAJOR ACTIVITY (18+ years old) 9,883 1. Working 4,655 2. Keeping house 846 3. Going to school 6,343 4. Something else 246 5. Unknown 5,393 Blank. Not applicable (Under 18 years)

*Count includes spouse in military but living at home.

NHIS PUBLIC USE TAPE RECORD
DOCTOR VISIT RECORD

Tape Locations	Item No.	Frequency	Items and Codes
70	G-4		HEALTH STATUS
		5,441 6,071 7,302 4,560 3,806 186	1. Excellent 2. Very Good 3. Good 4. Fair 5. Poor 6. Unknown
71	Recode		ACTIVITY LIMITATION STATUS - (all ages)*
		5,491 3,339 2,338 16,198	1. Unable to perform major activity 2. Limited in kind/amount major activity 3. Limited in other activities 4. Not limited (includes unknowns)
72	Recode		ACTIVITY LIMITATION STATUS MEASURED BY "ABILITY TO WORK" (18-69 years)
		4,559 1,692 1,148 9,993 9,974	1. Unable to work 2. Limited in kind/amount of work 3. Limited in other activities 4. Not limited (includes unknowns) Blank. Not applicable (under 18 years, 70+ years)
73	B-11		LIMITATION OF SCHOOL ACTIVITIES (5-17 years)
		111 247 38 130 160 2,375 24,305	1. Unable to attend school 2. Attends special school/classes 3. Needs special school/classes 4. Limited in school attendance 5. Limited in other activities 6. Not limited (includes unknowns) Blank. Not applicable (under 5 years or 18+ years)

*This recode is used to categorize persons with limitation of activity in the Current Estimates tables.

NHIS PUBLIC USE TAPE RECORD
DOCTOR VISIT RECORD

Tape Locations	Item No.	Frequency	Items and Codes
74	B-14		NEEDS HELP WITH PERSONAL CARE (5-59 years old and limited, or age 60-69 years)* 1,194 1. Unable to perform personal care needs 1,414 2. Limited in performing other routine needs 6,660 3. Not limited in performing personal or routine needs 41 4. Unknown 18,057 Blank. Not applicable (under 5 years; 5-59 years not limited; 70+ years old)
75	D-1		EMPLOYMENT STATUS IN PAST 2 WEEKS (18+ years) <u>In the Labor Force:</u> (1-7) <u>Currently employed:</u> (1-3) 9,501 1. Worked in past 2 weeks 801 2. Did not work, has job; not on lay-off and not looking for work 6 3. Did not work, has job; looking for work <u>Unemployed:</u> (4-7) 64 4. Did not work, has job; on lay-off 3 5. Did not work, has job; on lay-off and looking for work 127 6. Did not work, has job; unknown if looking or on lay-off 404 7. Did not work, has no job; looking for work or on lay-off <u>Not in Labor Force (18+ years):</u> (8) 11,067 8. Not in Labor Force (18+ years) 5,393 Blank. Not applicable (Under 18 years old)

*For persons 70+ years, codes 1 and 2 in loc. 71 correspond to codes 1 and 2 in loc. 74.

NHIS PUBLIC USE TAPE RECORD
DOCTOR VISIT RECORD

Tape Locations	Item No.	Frequency	Items and Codes
76	L-6		CLASS OF WORKER
		11,067	0. Not in labor force
		7,311	1. Private company
		381	2. Federal Government employee
		589	3. State Government employee
		1,056	4. Local Government employee
		295	5. Incorporated business
		958	6. Self-employed
		13	7. Without pay
		14	8. Never worked
		289	9. Unknown
		5,393	Blank. Under 18
77-79	L-6		INDUSTRY DETAIL CODE
		10,906	010-998. Code number
		16,460	Blank. Not applicable
80-81	Recode		INDUSTRY RECODE 1
			SEE APPENDIX B
82-83	Recode		INDUSTRY RECODE 2
			SEE APPENDIX B
84-86	L-6		OCCUPATION DETAIL CODE
		10,906	001-998. Code number
		16,460	Blank. Not applicable
87-88	Recode		OCCUPATION RECODE 1
			SEE APPENDIX C
89-90	Recode		OCCUPATION RECODE 2
			SEE APPENDIX C

NHIS PUBLIC USE TAPE RECORD
DOCTOR VISIT RECORD

Tape Locations	Item No.	Frequency	Items and Codes
91	L-R		RESPONDENT
		15,853 1,500 9,757 256	1. Self-entirely 2. Self-partly 3. Proxy 4. Unknown
92	Recode		CONDITION LIST ASSIGNED AND ASKED
		4,472 4,281 4,594 4,473 5,010 4,332 204	1. Condition List 1, Skin and musculoskeletal 2. Condition List 2, Impairments 3. Condition List 3, Digestive 4. Condition List 4, Miscellaneous 5. Condition List 5, Circulatory 6. Condition List 6, Respiratory 7. Unknown
<u>93-96</u>	F-1		DATE OF VISIT
		0 3,231 3,103	6666. During 2 weeks, DK when 7777. Last week, DK day 8888. Week before, DK day
93-94			MONTH
		1,406 1,644 1,966 1,815 1,784 1,689 1,649 1,840 1,710 1,764 1,746 1,616 403	01. January 02. February 03. March 04. April 05. May 06. June 07. July 08. August 09. September 10. October 11. November 12. December 99. DK month
95-96			DAY
		20,629 403	01-31. Day of month 99. DK day codes for Unknown in month and day

NHIS PUBLIC USE TAPE RECORD
DOCTOR VISIT RECORD

Tape Locations	Item No.	Frequency	Items and Codes
97-98	Recode		<p>DOCTOR VISIT VALUES (Number of days between Date of Visit and Interview)</p> <p>217 00. Visit on last Sunday of reference period 505 01. Visit on second Saturday of reference period 2,276 02. Visit on second Friday of reference period 2,066 03. Visit on second Thursday of reference period 2,078 04. Visit on second Wednesday of reference period 2,032 05. Visit on second Tuesday of reference period 2,217 06. Visit on second Monday of reference period 228 07. Visit on first Sunday of reference period 463 08. Visit on first Saturday of reference period 1,740 09. Visit on first Friday of reference period 1,616 10. Visit on first Thursday of reference period 1,681 11. Visit on first Wednesday of reference period 1,699 12. Visit on first Tuesday of reference period 1,811 13. Visit on first Monday of reference period 6,737 14. No value (records not coded 01-31 in Day of Month of Visit)</p>
99	Recode		<p>DAY OF WEEK OF VISIT</p> <p>4,028 1. Monday 3,731 2. Tuesday 3,759 3. Wednesday 3,682 4. Thursday 4,016 5. Friday 968 6. Saturday 445 7. Sunday 6,737 8. Unknown</p>

NHIS PUBLIC USE TAPE RECORD
DOCTOR VISIT RECORD

Tape Locations	Item No.	Frequency	Items and Codes
100	Recode		<p style="text-align: center;">WEEK OF VISIT</p> <p>14,622 1. Last week 12,341 2. Week before 403 3. During 2 weeks, DK when</p>
101-102	F-2		<p style="text-align: center;">PLACE OF VISIT</p> <p>3,360 01. Telephone <u>Not in Hospital</u> 1,538 02. Home 15,203 03. Doctor's office 421 04. Company or Industrial clinic 1,705 05. Other clinic 103 06. Laboratory 720 07. Other <u>In Hospital</u> 2,048 08. Outpatient clinic 906 09. Emergency Room 706 10. Doctor's office 178 11. Laboratory 286 12. Other 192 13. Unknown</p>
103	Recode		<p style="text-align: center;">PLACE OF VISIT</p> <p>3,360 1. Telephone 15,203 2. Doctor's office (not in hospital) 2,048 3. Hospital Outpatient clinic 906 4. Hospital Emergency Room 706 5. Doctor's office in hospital 421 6. Company or Industry clinic 1,538 7. Home 2,992 8. Other place (Loc. 101-102 = 5,6,7,11,12) 192 9. Unknown</p>

NHIS PUBLIC USE TAPE RECORD
DOCTOR VISIT RECORD

Tape Locations	Item No.	Frequency	Items and Codes
104	F-3		MEDICAL DOCTOR ACTUALLY TALKED TO
		19,559 7,312 495	1. Yes 2. No 3. Unknown
105-106	F-3		KIND OF MEDICAL DOCTOR FOR THIS DOCTOR VISIT/CONTACT
		1,677 10,711 30 471 3,058 467 1,502 788 1,363 119 460 9 2,010 22 581 661 563 663 281 412 13 1,336 169	00. M.D., DK if G.P. or specialist 01. General practitioner 02. Anesthesiologist 03. Dermatologist 04. Internist 05. Neurologist 06. Obstetrician/Gynecologist 07. Ophthalmologist 08. Orthopedist 09. Osteopath 10. Otolaryngologist 11. Pathologist 12. Pediatrician 13. Proctologist 14. Psychiatrist 15. Radiologist 16. Surgeon (not listed above) 18. Urologist 19. Other M.D. specialist 20. Specialist, DK kind 21. Family Practice (specialist) 22. DK if medical doctor Blank. Not applicable; no medical doctor reported for this visit/contact

NHIS PUBLIC USE TAPE RECORD
DOCTOR VISIT RECORD

Tape Locations	Item No.	Frequency	Items and Codes
107-108	F-3		<p style="text-align: center;">TYPE OF MEDICAL ASSISTANT SEEN/TALKED TO</p> <p>199 31. Nurse practitioner 177 32. Physician's assistant 3,333 33. Nurse 241 34. Laboratory technician 3 35. Paramedic 792 36. Physical therapist 6 37. Social worker 54 38. Pharmacist 100 39. X-ray technician 212 40. Other technician 70 41. Dentist/oral surgeon 61 42. Optometrist/Optician 643 43. Chiropractor 216 44. Foot specialist 8 45. Dietician 142 46. Psychologist 5 47. Nutritionist 3 48. Naprapath 0 49. Orthoptic technician/Orthopist 740 50. Other non-medical person 802 51. Unknown type of medical assistant 19,559 Blank. Not applicable; medical assistant not talked to (Location 104 = 1)</p>

NHIS PUBLIC USE TAPE RECORD
DOCTOR VISIT RECORD

Tape Locations	Item No.	Frequency	Items and Codes
109-110	F-3		TYPE OF PERSON TALKED TO/SEEN
	661		00. M.D., DK if G.P. or specialist
	8,311		01. General practitioner
	28		02. Anesthesiologist
	407		03. Dermatologist
	2,146		04. Internist
	351		05. Neurologist
	1,237		06. Obstetrician/Gynecologist
	745		07. Ophthalmologist
	895		08. Orthopedist
	92		09. Osteopath
	394		10. Otolaryngologist
	8		11. Pathologist
	1,697		12. Pediatrician
	21		13. Proctologist
	476		14. Psychiatrist
	436		15. Radiologist
	479		16. Surgeon (not listed above)
	526		18. Urologist
	200		19. Other M.D. specialist
	312		20. Specialist, DK kind
	13		21. Family Practice (specialist)
	199		31. Nurse practitioner
	177		32. Physician's assistant
	3,333		33. Nurse
	241		34. Laboratory technician
	3		35. Paramedic
	792		36. Physical therapist
	6		37. Social worker
	54		38. Pharmacist
	100		39. X-ray technician
	212		40. Other technician
	70		41. Dentist/Oral surgeon
	61		42. Optometrist/Optician
	643		43. Chiropractor
	216		44. Foot specialist
	8		45. Dietician
	142		46. Psychologist
	5		47. Nutritionist
	3		48. Naprapath
	0		49. Orthoptic technician/Orthoptist
	740		50. Other non-medical person
	802		51. Not MD; unknown type of medical assistant
	124		52. Unknown if MD

NHIS PUBLIC USE TAPE RECORD
DOCTOR VISIT RECORD

Tape Locations	Item No.	Frequency	Items and Codes
	<u>111-161</u>		<u>CONDITIONS FOR WHICH DOCTOR VISITED</u>
	<u>111-127</u>		<u>CONDITION NO. 1</u>
111-112	F-4		<u>SERIAL NUMBER</u>
			01-99. Condition Serial Number Blank.
113-116	Condition Record	460 21,862 5,044	<u>ICD/NHIS CODE</u> 0000. No matched condition record ICD/NHIS Code (note Unknown =7999) Blank. No condition for this visit
117	Condition Record	460 14,360 7,502 5,044	<u>CHRONIC/ACUTE CODE</u> 0. No matched condition record 1. Chronic 2. Acute Blank. No condition for this visit
118-121	Condition Record	460 6,744 758 19,404	<u>ACUTE RECODE (A)</u> 0000. No matched condition record 1001-5931. Acute Recode 5932. All other acute conditions including unknowns Blank. Chronic condition or no condition for this visit
122-124	Condition Record	460 10,519 3,841 12,546	<u>CHRONIC RECODE (C)</u> 000. No matched condition record 101-615. Chronic Recode 999. All other chronic conditions including unknowns Blank. Acute condition or no condition for this visit
125-127	Condition Record	460 21,627 235 5,044	<u>CONDITION RECODE (B)</u> 000. No matched condition record 010-570. Condition recode 990. All other conditions including known Blank. No condition for this visit

NHIS PUBLIC USE TAPE RECORD
DOCTOR VISIT RECORD

Tape Locations	Item No.	Frequency	Items and Codes
<u>111-161</u>			CONDITIONS FOR WHICH DOCTOR VISITED - cont...
<u>128-144</u>			CONDITION NO. 2
128-129	F-4		<u>SERIAL NUMBER</u> 01-99. Condition Serial Number Blank.
130-133	Condition Record		<u>ICD/NHIS CODE</u> 172 0000. No matched condition record 4,094 ICD/NHIS Code (note Unknown = 7999) 23,100 Blank. No condition for this visit
134	Condition Record		<u>CHRONIC/ACUTE CODE</u> 172 0. No matched condition record 2,949 1. Chronic 1,145 2. Acute 23,100 Blank. No condition for this visit
135-138	Condition Record		<u>ACUTE RECODE (A)</u> 172 0000. No matched condition record 943 1001-5931. Acute Recode 202 5932. All other acute conditions including unknowns 26,049 Blank. Chronic condition or no condition for this visit
139-141	Condition Record		<u>CHRONIC RECODE (C)</u> 172 000. No matched condition record 2,286 101-615. Chronic Recode 663 999. All other chronic conditions including unknowns 24,245 Blank. Acute condition or no condition for this visit
142-144	Condition Record		<u>CONDITION RECODE (B)</u> 172 000. No matched condition record 4,072 010-570. Condition recode 22 990. All other conditions including unknown 23,100 Blank. No condition for this visit

NHIS PUBLIC USE TAPE RECORD
DOCTOR VISIT RECORD

Tape Locations	Item No.	Frequency	Items and Codes
	<u>111-161</u>		CONDITIONS FOR WHICH DOCTOR VISITED- cont...
	<u>145-161</u>		CONDITION NO. 3
	145-146	F-4	<u>SERIAL NUMBER</u> 01-99. Condition Serial Number Blank.
	147-150	Condition Record	<u>ICD/NHIS CODE</u> 57 0000. No matched condition record 1,042 ICD/NHIS Code (note Unknown = 7999) 26,267 Blank. No condition for this visit
	151	Condition Record	<u>CHRONIC/ACUTE CODE</u> 57 0. No matched condition record 844 1. Chronic 198 2. Acute 26,267 Blank. No condition for this visit
	152-155	Condition Record	<u>ACUTE RECODE (A)</u> 57 0000. No matched condition record 158 1001-5931. Acute Recode 40 5932. All other acute conditions including unknowns 27,111 Blank. Chronic condition or no condition for this visit
	156-158	Condition Record	<u>CHRONIC RECODE (C)</u> 57 000. No matched condition record 680 101-615. Chronic Recode 164 999. All other chronic conditions including unknowns 26,465 Blank. Acute condition or no condition for this visit
	159-161	Condition Record	<u>CONDITION RECODE (B)</u> 57 000. No matched condition record 1,039 010-570. Condition recode 3 990. All other conditions including unknown 26,267 Blank. No condition for this visit

NHIS PUBLIC USE TAPE RECORD
DOCTOR VISIT RECORD

Tape Locations	Item No.	Frequency	Items and Codes
162	F-5		OPERATIONS PERFORMED DURING THIS VISIT
		1,041	1. Yes
		22,047	2. No
		918	3. Unknown
		3,360	Blank. Not applicable (telephone call)
<u>163-168</u>	F-5		OPERATION CODE
<u>163-164</u>			<u>OPERATION NO. 1</u>
			See Appendix E
<u>165-166</u>			<u>OPERATION NO. 2</u>
			See Appendix E
<u>167-168</u>			<u>OPERATION NO. 3</u>
			See Appendix E
169-177	-		BLANK
178	Master Record		TYPE OF SUBSTRATUM
		4,392	0. Permit
		2,403	1. Area, oversampled for blacks
		20,571	2. Area, not oversampled for blacks
179-181	-		FULL SAMPLE STRATUM IDENTIFIER
182	Master Record		REGION
		5,462	1. Northeast
		6,899	2. Midwest
		8,624	3. South
		6,381	4. West
183	Master Record		GEOGRAPHIC DISTRIBUTION
			<u>MSA Size</u>
		11,691	1. 1,000,000 or more
		7,420	2. 250,000 - 999,999
		1,760	3. 100,000 - 249,999
		388	4. Under 100,000
		6,107	Blank. Non-MSA
184	-		BLANK

NHIS PUBLIC USE TAPE RECORD
DOCTOR VISIT RECORD

Tape Locations	Item No.	Frequency	Items and Codes
185	Master Record		TYPE OF PSU
		14,878	1. MSA - Self-representing
		6,381	3. MSA - Nonself-representing
		2	4. Non-MSA - Self-representing
		6,105	6. Non-MSA - Nonself-representing
186	Recode		MSA - NON-MSA RESIDENCE
		8,671	1. MSA - Central City
		12,588	2. MSA - Not Central City
		5,788	3. Non-MSA - Nonfarm
		319	4. Non-MSA - Farm
187-189			PSEUDO PSU CODES
190-200			CHRONIC CONDITION PREVALENCE AND INCIDENCE FACTOR (XX.XXXXXXXXXX) character format with implied decimal
			FINAL BASIC WEIGHT
201-209			<u>QUARTER</u>
210-218			<u>SEMI-ANNUAL (WT/2)</u>
219-227			<u>ANNUAL (WT/4)</u>
			6.5 WEIGHT
228-236			<u>QUARTER, SEMI-ANNUAL AND ANNUAL</u>
237-335			BLANK

H O S P I T A L R E C O R D

NOTES:

NHIS PUBLIC USE TAPE RECORDS
Outline of Items and Codes
Number of Records = 11,811
HOSPITAL RECORD

Tape Locations	Item No.	Frequency	Items and Codes
RECORD TYPE			
1-2	-	11,811	50. Hospital Record
PROCESSING YEAR			
3-4	-	11,811	94. 1994
PROCESSING QUARTER			
5	-	2,787	1. Quarter 1
		3,071	2. Quarter 2
		3,023	3. Quarter 3
		2,930	4. Quarter 4
6-8	HH-5	RANDOM RECODE OF PSU NUMBER	
9-10	HH-5	WEEK - CENSUS CODE*	
		01, 21, 41, 61, 81 ...	Week 01
		02, 22, 42, 62, 82 ...	Week 02
		03, 23, 43, 63, 83 ...	Week 03
		04, 24, 44, 64, 84 ...	Week 04
		05, 25, 45, 65, 85 ...	Week 05
		06, 26, 46, 66, 86 ...	Week 06
		07, 27, 47, 67, 87 ...	Week 07
		08, 28, 48, 68, 88 ...	Week 08
		09, 29, 49, 69, 89 ...	Week 09
		10, 30, 50, 70, 90 ...	Week 10
		11, 31, 51, 71, 91 ...	Week 11
		12, 32, 52, 72, 92 ...	Week 12
		13, 33, 53, 73, 93 ...	Week 13

*This code represents the initial week of assignment. The interview may be re-assigned for administrative purposes. See Locations 19-20 for the code which reflects the actual week assigned for conducting the interview.

NHIS PUBLIC USE TAPE RECORD
HOSPITAL RECORD

Tape Locations	Item No.	Frequency	Items and Codes
11-12	HH-5		SEGMENT NUMBER Week plus Segment Number identifies the segment
13-14	HH-5		HOUSEHOLD NUMBER Numbered within PSU-Week-Segment
15-16	-		PERSON NUMBER
17-18	-		HOSPITAL SERIAL NUMBER 01-99. Serial Number
19-20	HH-5		PROCESSING WEEK CODE (Numbered within Quarter) 671 01. Week 01 982 02. Week 02 926 03. Week 03 971 04. Week 04 952 05. Week 05 911 06. Week 06 946 07. Week 07 937 08. Week 08 886 09. Week 09 868 10. Week 10 894 11. Week 11 935 12. Week 12 932 13. Week 13
21	Recode		LATE INTERVIEW (OR LAST ATTEMPT) FLAG 7,316 0. Interview not late 3,153 1. One week late 1,058 2. Two weeks late 284 3. Unknown

NHIS PUBLIC USE TAPE RECORD
HOSPITAL RECORD

Tape Locations	Item No.	Frequency	Items and Codes																																										
22-23	HH-10c,d		<p>TYPE OF LIVING QUARTERS:</p> <p><u>Housing Unit = (00-07)</u></p> <table><tbody><tr><td>228</td><td>00.</td><td>Housing unit; kind unknown</td></tr><tr><td>10,719</td><td>01.</td><td>House, apartment, flat</td></tr><tr><td>16</td><td>02.</td><td>HU in nontransient hotel, motel, etc.</td></tr><tr><td>11</td><td>03.</td><td>HU-permanent in transient hotel, motel, etc.</td></tr><tr><td>3</td><td>04.</td><td>HU in rooming house</td></tr><tr><td>673</td><td>05.</td><td>Mobile home or trailer with no permanent room added</td></tr><tr><td>95</td><td>06.</td><td>Mobile home or trailer with one or more permanent rooms added</td></tr><tr><td>16</td><td>07.</td><td>HU not specified above</td></tr></tbody></table> <p><u>Other Unit = (08-13)</u></p> <table><tbody><tr><td>2</td><td>08.</td><td>Quarters not HU in rooming or boarding house</td></tr><tr><td>0</td><td>09.</td><td>Unit not permanent in transient hotel, motel, etc.</td></tr><tr><td>1</td><td>10.</td><td>Unoccupied site for mobile home, trailer, or tent</td></tr><tr><td>15</td><td>11.</td><td>Student quarters in college dormitory</td></tr><tr><td>27</td><td>12.</td><td>Other unit not specified above</td></tr><tr><td>5</td><td>13.</td><td>Other unit; kind unknown</td></tr></tbody></table>	228	00.	Housing unit; kind unknown	10,719	01.	House, apartment, flat	16	02.	HU in nontransient hotel, motel, etc.	11	03.	HU-permanent in transient hotel, motel, etc.	3	04.	HU in rooming house	673	05.	Mobile home or trailer with no permanent room added	95	06.	Mobile home or trailer with one or more permanent rooms added	16	07.	HU not specified above	2	08.	Quarters not HU in rooming or boarding house	0	09.	Unit not permanent in transient hotel, motel, etc.	1	10.	Unoccupied site for mobile home, trailer, or tent	15	11.	Student quarters in college dormitory	27	12.	Other unit not specified above	5	13.	Other unit; kind unknown
228	00.	Housing unit; kind unknown																																											
10,719	01.	House, apartment, flat																																											
16	02.	HU in nontransient hotel, motel, etc.																																											
11	03.	HU-permanent in transient hotel, motel, etc.																																											
3	04.	HU in rooming house																																											
673	05.	Mobile home or trailer with no permanent room added																																											
95	06.	Mobile home or trailer with one or more permanent rooms added																																											
16	07.	HU not specified above																																											
2	08.	Quarters not HU in rooming or boarding house																																											
0	09.	Unit not permanent in transient hotel, motel, etc.																																											
1	10.	Unoccupied site for mobile home, trailer, or tent																																											
15	11.	Student quarters in college dormitory																																											
27	12.	Other unit not specified above																																											
5	13.	Other unit; kind unknown																																											
24	HH-11a		<p>HAS TELEPHONE</p> <table><tbody><tr><td>10,708</td><td>1.</td><td>Yes, phone number given</td></tr><tr><td>363</td><td>2.</td><td>Yes, no phone number given</td></tr><tr><td>637</td><td>3.</td><td>No</td></tr><tr><td>103</td><td>4.</td><td>Unknown</td></tr></tbody></table>	10,708	1.	Yes, phone number given	363	2.	Yes, no phone number given	637	3.	No	103	4.	Unknown																														
10,708	1.	Yes, phone number given																																											
363	2.	Yes, no phone number given																																											
637	3.	No																																											
103	4.	Unknown																																											
25	A-1		<p>SEX</p> <table><tbody><tr><td>4,684</td><td>1.</td><td>Male</td></tr><tr><td>7,127</td><td>2.</td><td>Female</td></tr></tbody></table>	4,684	1.	Male	7,127	2.	Female																																				
4,684	1.	Male																																											
7,127	2.	Female																																											
26	-		<p>BLANK</p>																																										

NHIS PUBLIC USE TAPE RECORD
HOSPITAL RECORD

Tape Locations	Item No.	Frequency	Items and Codes
27-28	Person Column		AGE
		220	00. Under 1 year
		11,582	01-98. Number of years
		9	99. 99+ years of age
29	Recode		AGE RECODE #1
		626	1. Under 5 years
		694	2. 5-17 years
		931	3. 18-24 years
		3,250	4. 25-44 years
		2,724	5. 45-64 years
		913	6. 65-69 years
		937	7. 70-74 years
		1,736	8. 75 years and over
30	Recode		AGE RECODE #2
		659	1. Under 6 years
		549	2. 6-16 years
		1,043	3. 17-24 years
		1,752	4. 25-34 years
		1,498	5. 35-44 years
		1,315	6. 45-54 years
		1,409	7. 55-64 years
		1,850	8. 65-74 years
		1,736	9. 75 years and over
31-32	Recode		AGE RECODE #3
		486	00-35. Months
		11,325	36. Over 3 years
33	-		BLANK

NHIS PUBLIC USE TAPE RECORD
HOSPITAL RECORD

Tape Locations	Item No.	Frequency	Items and Codes														
<u>34-39</u>	A-3		MONTH AND YEAR OF BIRTH														
34-35			<u>MONTH</u>														
			<table><tr><td>01. January</td><td>08. August</td></tr><tr><td>02. February</td><td>09. September</td></tr><tr><td>03. March</td><td>10. October</td></tr><tr><td>04. April</td><td>11. November</td></tr><tr><td>05. May</td><td>12. December</td></tr><tr><td>06. June</td><td>99. Unknown</td></tr><tr><td>07. July</td><td></td></tr></table>	01. January	08. August	02. February	09. September	03. March	10. October	04. April	11. November	05. May	12. December	06. June	99. Unknown	07. July	
01. January	08. August																
02. February	09. September																
03. March	10. October																
04. April	11. November																
05. May	12. December																
06. June	99. Unknown																
07. July																	
36-39			<u>YEAR OF BIRTH</u>														
			1800-1899. 1800-1899 1900-1995. 1900-1995 9999. Unknown														
40	Recode		HISPANIC ORIGIN IMPUTED FLAG														
		11,705	0. Hispanic Origin Known														
		106	1. Hispanic Origin Imputed from Reference Person														
41-42	L-4		MAIN RACIAL BACKGROUND* (See notation for locations 43-45)														
		9,216	01. White														
		1,892	02. Black														
		122	03. Indian (American)														
		4	04. Eskimo														
		0	05. Aleut														
		36	06. Chinese														
		41	07. Filipino														
		3	08. Hawaiian														
		21	09. Korean														
		16	10. Vietnamese														
		20	11. Japanese														
		17	12. Asian Indian														
		0	13. Samoan														
		2	14. Guamanian														
		28	15. Other API														
		188	16. Other race														
		45	17. Multiple race														
		160	99. Unknown														

*Some categories may be too small to analyze separately and therefore may produce unreliable estimates; in addition, counts may not agree with those produced by the Census Bureau.

NHIS PUBLIC USE TAPE RECORD
HOSPITAL RECORD

Tape Locations	Item No.	Frequency	Items and Codes
<u>43-45</u>	Recode		RACE RECODES
43			RECODE 1*
		9,586	1. White
		1,900	2. Black
		325	3. Other
			RECODE 2
44		9,586	1. White
		2,225	2. Non-white
			RECODE 3
45		1,900	1. Black
		9,911	2. Non-black
			Persons whose Main Racial Background (location 41-42) was "other" or "unknown" were classified in the following recodes by using the racial background observed by the interviewer. Use of these recodes is recommended for estimating statistics for the groups shown here.
<u>46-47</u>	L-3		HISPANIC ORIGIN**
		10	00. Multiple Hispanic
		137	01. Puerto Rican
		66	02. Cuban
		223	03. Mexican-Mexicano
		352	04. Mexican-American
		11	05. Chicano
		94	06. Other Latin American
		97	07. Other Spanish
		36	08. Spanish, DK type
		104	09. Unknown if Spanish origin
		10,681	10. Not Spanish origin

*This recode is used to categorize race in the Current Estimates tables.

**If unknown, the family reference person code was imputed. A flag indicating imputation is in loc. 40 and the relationship to reference person is in loc. 63.

NHIS PUBLIC USE TAPE RECORD
HOSPITAL RECORD

Tape Locations	Item No.	Frequency	Items and Codes
48	L-7		MARITAL STATUS
		991	0. Under 14 years
		6,527	1. Married - spouse in household
		125	2. Married - spouse not in household
		1,487	3. Widowed
		972	4. Divorced
		257	5. Separated
		1,396	6. Never married
		56	7. Unknown
49	L-1		VETERAN STATUS
		8,366	1. Non-veteran
		13	2. WW I
		765	3. WW II
		364	4. Korean War
		367	5. Vietnam veteran
		99	6. Post-Vietnam
		243	7. Other service
		77	8. Served in Armed Forces, unknown if war veteran
		197	9. Unknown if served in Armed Forces
		1,320	Blank. Under 18 years of age
50	L-1		ACTIVE GUARD/RESERVE STATUS FOR PERSONS ON ACTIVE DUTY IN ARMED FORCES
		8,366	0. Non-veteran
		103	1. All service in Guard/Reserve
		282	2. Some service in Guard/Reserve
		6	3. Unknown if all service in Guard/Reserve
		1,372	4. No active service in Guard/Reserve
		362	5. Unknown if ever active member in Guard/Reserve or if served in Armed Forces
		1,320	Blank. Under 18 years of age
51-52	L-2		EDUCATION OF INDIVIDUAL - COMPLETED YEARS
		171	00. Never attended; kindergarten only
		7,499	01-12. Grades 1-12
			<u>College:</u>
		655	13. 1 year
		917	14. 2 years
		308	15. 3 years
		923	16. 4 years
		166	17. 5 years
		378	18. 6 years or more
		168	19. Unknown
		626	Blank. Under 5 years of age

NHIS PUBLIC USE TAPE RECORD
HOSPITAL RECORD

Tape Locations	Item No.	Frequency	Items and Codes
53	Recode		EDUCATION OF INDIVIDUAL RECODE
		171	0. None; kindergarten only
		1,796	1. 1-8 years (elementary)
		1,917	2. 9-11 years (high school)
		3,786	3. 12 years (high school graduate)
		1,880	4. 1-3 years (college)
		923	5. 4 years (college graduate)
		544	6. 5+ years (post-college)
		168	7. Unknown
		626	Blank. Under 5 years of age
54-55	-		HIGHEST EDUCATION OF RESPONSIBLE ADULT FAMILY MEMBER (Detail)
		36	00. Never attended; kindergarten only
		6,510	01-12. Grades 1-12
			<u>College:</u>
		913	13. 1 year
		1,318	14. 2 years
		483	15. 3 years
		1,394	16. 4 years
		303	17. 5 years
		736	18. 6 years or more
		118	19. Unknown
56	-		HIGHEST EDUCATION OF RESPONSIBLE ADULT FAMILY MEMBER RECODE
		36	0. None; kindergarten only
		838	1. 1-8 years (elementary)
		1,434	2. 9-11 years (high school)
		4,238	3. 12 years (high school graduate)
		2,714	4. 1-3 years (college)
		1,394	5. 4 years (college graduate)
		1,039	6. 5+ years (post-college)
		118	7. Unknown
57	L-8		FAMILY INCOME \$20,000 OR MORE
		4,939	1. Less than \$20,000
		6,418	2. \$20,000 or more
		454	3. Unknown

NHIS PUBLIC USE TAPE RECORD
HOSPITAL RECORD

Tape Locations	Item No.	Frequency	Items and Codes
58-59	L-8		FAMILY INCOME
			52 00. Less than \$1,000
			93 01. \$ 1,000 - \$ 1,999
			84 02. 2,000 - 2,999
			100 03. 3,000 - 3,999
			145 04. 4,000 - 4,999
			220 05. 5,000 - 5,999
			254 06. 6,000 - 6,999
			271 07. 7,000 - 7,999
			227 08. 8,000 - 8,999
			276 09. 9,000 - 9,999
			281 10. 10,000 - 10,999
			162 11. 11,000 - 11,999
			326 12. 12,000 - 12,999
			202 13. 13,000 - 13,999
			200 14. 14,000 - 14,999
			208 15. 15,000 - 15,999
			192 16. 16,000 - 16,999
			170 17. 17,000 - 17,999
			214 18. 18,000 - 18,999
			291 19. 19,000 - 19,999
			1,076 20. 20,000 - 24,999
			681 21. 25,000 - 29,999
			734 22. 30,000 - 34,999
			520 23. 35,000 - 39,999
			547 24. 40,000 - 44,999
			386 25. 45,000 - 49,999
			1,690 26. \$50,000 and over
			2,209 27. Unknown
60	Recode		FAMILY INCOME RECODE
			474 0. Under \$5,000
			474 1. \$ 5,000 - \$ 6,999
			774 2. 7,000 - 9,999
			1,171 3. 10,000 - 14,999
			1,075 4. 15,000 - 19,999
			1,076 5. 20,000 - 24,999
			1,415 6. 25,000 - 34,999
			1,453 7. 35,000 - 49,999
			1,690 8. \$50,000 or more
			2,209 9. Unknown
61	Generated		NHIS POVERTY INDEX*
			8,450 1. Above poverty threshold
			1,927 2. Below poverty threshold
			1,434 3. Unknown

* Based on family size, number of children under 18 years of age & family income using the 1993 poverty levels derived from the August, 1994 Current Population Survey.

NHIS PUBLIC USE TAPE RECORD
HOSPITAL RECORD

Tape Locations	Item No.	Frequency	Items and Codes
62-63			FAMILY RELATIONSHIP
62	A-2		TYPE OF FAMILY
		1,867	&. Primary individual
		66	- . Secondary individual
		9,856	0. Primary family
		22	1-9. Secondary family
63	A-2		RELATIONSHIP TO REFERENCE PERSON
		1,817	&. Reference person, living alone
		4,299	0. Reference person, 2+ persons in household
		3,331	1. Spouse, other spouse NOT in Armed Forces and living at home
		55	2. Spouse, other spouse IN Armed Forces and living at home
		1,662	3. Child of reference person or spouse
		173	4. Grandchild of reference person or spouse
		225	5. Parent of reference person or spouse
		248	6. Other relative
		1	7. Child of ineligible reference person
		0	9. Unknown
64	Recode		FAMILY RELATIONSHIP RECODE
		1,817	1. Living alone
		116	2. Living only with non-relative
		6,522	3. Living with spouse
		3,356	4. Living with relative - other
65-66	Generated		SIZE OF FAMILY*
			Unrelated individuals are coded 01
67	Generated		SIZE OF FAMILY RECODE
			1-8. Number of members
			9. 9+ members

*Count includes spouse in military but living at home.

NHIS PUBLIC USE TAPE RECORD
HOSPITAL RECORD

Tape Locations	Item No.	Frequency	Items and Codes
68	A-2		PARENT/OTHER ADULT RELATIVE (under 25 years old and never married) 877 1. Both parents, no other relative 368 2. Mother only 18 3. Father only 91 4. Both parents and other 21+ year old adult relative 136 5. Mother and other 21+ year old adult relative 8 6. Father and other 21+ year old adult relative 22 7. No parent, but one 21+ year old adult relative 49 8. No parent, but two or more 21+ year old adult relatives 59 9. Unknown 112 0. Other 10,071 Blank. Not applicable (25+ years old or ever married)
69	B-1 B-8		MAJOR ACTIVITY (18+ years old) 3,606 1. Working 2,776 2. Keeping house 291 3. Going to school 3,702 4. Something else 116 5. Unknown 1,320 Blank. Not applicable (Under 18 years)
70	G-4		HEALTH STATUS 1,901 1. Excellent 2,104 2. Very Good 3,102 3. Good 2,360 4. Fair 2,270 5. Poor 74 6. Unknown
71	Recode		ACTIVITY LIMITATION STATUS - (all ages)* 2,943 1. Unable to perform major activity 1,633 2. Limited in kind/amount major activity 1,188 3. Limited in other activities 6,047 4. Not limited (includes unknowns)
72	Recode		ACTIVITY LIMITATION STATUS MEASURED BY "ABILITY TO WORK" (18-69 years) 2,481 1. Unable to work 668 2. Limited in kind/amount of work 453 3. Limited in other activities 4,216 4. Not limited (includes unknowns) 3,993 Blank. Not applicable (under 18 years; 70+ years)

*This recode is used to categorize persons with limitation of activity in the Current Estimates tables.

NHIS PUBLIC USE TAPE RECORD
HOSPITAL RECORD

Tape Locations	Item No.	Frequency	Items and Codes
73	B-11		LIMITATION OF SCHOOL ACTIVITIES (5-17 years) 69 1. Unable to attend school 76 2. Attends special school/classes 9 3. Needs special school/classes 71 4. Limited in school attendance 48 5. Limited in other activities 421 6. Not limited (includes unknowns) 11,117 Blank. Not applicable (under 5 years; 18+ years)
74	B-14		NEEDS HELP WITH PERSONAL CARE (5-59 years old and limited, or age 60-69 years)* 569 1. Unable to perform personal care needs 747 2. Limited in performing other routine needs 2,984 3. Not limited in performing personal or routine needs 37 4. Unknown 7,474 Blank. Not applicable (under 5 years; 5-59 years not limited; 70+ years old)
75	D-1		EMPLOYMENT STATUS IN PAST 2 WEEKS (18+ years) <u>In the Labor Force:</u> (1-7) <u>Currently employed:</u> (1-3) 3,303 1. Worked in past 2 weeks 337 2. Did not work, has job; not on lay-off and not looking for work 3 3. Did not work, has job; looking for work <u>Unemployed:</u> (4-7) 37 4. Did not work, has job; on lay-off 0 5. Did not work, has job; on lay-off and looking for work 82 6. Did not work, has job; unknown if looking or on lay-off 201 7. Did not work, has no job; looking for work or on lay-off <u>Not in Labor Force (18+ years):</u> (8) 6,528 8. Not in Labor Force (18+ years) 1,320 Blank. Not applicable (Under 18 years old)

* For persons 70+ years, codes 1 and 2 in loc. 71 correspond to codes 1 and 2 in loc. 74.

NHIS PUBLIC USE TAPE RECORD
HOSPITAL RECORD

Tape Locations	Item No.	Frequency	Items and Codes
76	L-6		CLASS OF WORKER
		6,528	0. Not in labor force
		2,737	1. Private company
		124	2. Federal Government employee
		185	3. State Government employee
		342	4. Local Government employee
		101	5. Incorporated business
		359	6. Self-employed
		5	7. Without pay
		11	8. Never worked
		99	9. Unknown
		1,320	Blank. Under 18
77-79	L-6		INDUSTRY DETAIL CODE
		3,963	010-998. Code number
		7,848	Blank. Not applicable
80-81	Recode		INDUSTRY RECODE 1
			SEE APPENDIX B
82-83	Recode		INDUSTRY RECODE 2
			SEE APPENDIX B
84-86	L-6		OCCUPATION DETAIL CODE
		3,963	001-998. Code number
		7,848	Blank. Not applicable
87-88	Recode		OCCUPATION RECODE 1
			SEE APPENDIX C
89-90	Recode		OCCUPATION RECODE 2
			SEE APPENDIX C

NHIS PUBLIC USE TAPE RECORD
HOSPITAL RECORD

Tape Locations	Item No.	Frequency	Items and Codes
91	L-R		RESPONDENT
		7,453	1. Self-entirely
		810	2. Self-partly
		3,429	3. Proxy
		119	4. Unknown
92	Recode		CONDITION LIST ASSIGNED AND ASKED
		1,890	1. Condition List 1, Skin and Musculo-skeletal
		1,858	2. Condition List 2, Impairments
		2,004	3. Condition List 3, Digestive
		2,075	4. Condition List 4, Miscellaneous
		1,994	5. Condition List 5, Circulatory
		1,876	6. Condition List 6, Respiratory
		114	7. Unknown
93-94	Recode		HOSPITAL EPISODE NUMBER FOR SHORT-STAY HOSPITALS IN PAST YEAR
		11,587	01+. Number
		224	Blank. Long-stay hospitals
95-96	J-6		TYPE OF SERVICE
		10,561	01. General
		86	02. Psychiatric
		0	03. Tuberculosis
		27	04. Maternity
		8	06. Ear, Eye, Nose and Throat
		161	07. Children's
		7	08. Orthopedic
		0	09. Contagious Disease
		10	10. Chronic Disease
		2	11. Hospital department of institution
		73	12. All other
		0	89. In index, unknown type
		118	90. DK (entry of DK for hospital name and Not Reported, less than 31 nights in hospital)
		22	92. DK (entry of DK for hospital name and Not Reported - 31 or more nights in hospital)
		24	93. Hospitalized in Foreign Country, not in index
		0	94. Nursing personal, and domiciliary care homes
		2	95. Nursing home, assumed from title
		11	98. Osteopathic
		699	99. Not identified as a hospital, not in index

NHIS PUBLIC USE TAPE RECORD
HOSPITAL RECORD

Tape Locations	Item No.	Frequency	Items and Codes
97	Recode		RECODE FOR TYPE OF SERVICE
		11,587	1. Short-stay hospitals (Codes 01, 04, 06, 07, 11, 89, 90, 98, 99)
		200	2. Long-stay hospitals (Codes 02, 03, 08, 09, 10, 12, 92, 94, 95)
		24	3. Not in index (Code 93)
98-99	J-6		TYPE OF OWNERSHIP
			1. Governmental, nonfederal
		253	12. State
		373	13. County
		237	14. City
		12	15. City-county
		506	16. Hospital district
			2. Nonprofit
		1,956	21. Church operated or related
		6,304	23. Other nonprofit
		0	24. Nonprofit, N.O.S.
			3. Proprietary
		8	31. Individual
		57	32. Partnership
		937	33. Corporation (profit)
		0	34. Proprietary, N.O.S.
			4. Government, Federal
		33	41. Air Force
		37	51. Army
		20	61. Navy
		0	62. Department of Defense, N.O.S.
		14	71. Public Health Service
		187	81. Veterans Administration
		1	91. Other Federal
			5. All other
		0	89. In index, unknown type
		118	90. DK (entry of DK for hospital name and Not Reported, less than 31 nights in hospital)
		22	92. DK (entry of DK for hospital name and Not Reported - 31 or more nights in hospital)
		24	93. Hospitalized in Foreign Country, not in index
		2	95. Nursing home, assumed from title
		11	98. Osteopathic
		699	99. Not identified as a hospital, not in index

NHIS PUBLIC USE TAPE RECORD
HOSPITAL RECORD

Tape Locations	Item No.	Frequency	Items and Codes
<u>100-105</u>	J-2		DATE OF ADMISSION
100-101			<u>MONTH</u>
		1,010	01. January
		877	02. February
		948	03. March
		993	04. April
		962	05. May
		1,019	06. June
		939	07. July
		1,008	08. August
		929	09. September
		1,037	10. October
		1,053	11. November
		1,036	12. December
102-103			<u>DAY OF MONTH</u>
			01-31. Day of month
104-105			<u>YEAR</u>
		0	90. 1990
		0	91. 1991
		5	92. 1992
		5,441	93. 1993
		6,364	94. 1994
		1	95. 1995
106-109	Derived		NUMERICAL VALUE OF DATE OF ADMISSION
			0001-1841. Date Values
110	Derived		ADMISSION RECODE
		461	1. Admission in past 2 weeks
		11,086	2. Admission 2 weeks to a year ago
		264	3. Admission prior to past 12 months

NHIS PUBLIC USE TAPE RECORD
HOSPITAL RECORD

Tape Locations	Item No.	Frequency	Items and Codes
111-114	Derived		NUMERICAL VALUE FOR WEEK OF INTERVIEW
		11,811 0	1470-1841. Values 9999. Unknown
115-118	Derived		DERIVED DATE OF DISCHARGE
		11,811 0	0002-1841. Values 9999. Unknown
119-121	Derived		NUMBER OF NIGHTS IN PAST 12 MONTHS
			000-365. Number of nights
122-123	Derived		NUMBER OF NIGHTS IN PAST 2 WEEKS
			00-14. Number of nights
124-126	Derived		J - VALUE
		64 11,747	Blank. Negative value 000-364. Value
127	Recode		J - RECODE
		64 562 5,825 5,360	0. Still in hospital 1. Discharges past 2 weeks (000-013) 2. Discharges in 2 weeks to 6 months (014-181) 3. Discharges in 6-12 months (182-364)
128-131	J-3		TOTAL NIGHTS IN HOSPITAL
			0001-0365. Nights

NHIS PUBLIC USE TAPE RECORD
HOSPITAL RECORD

Tape Locations	Item No.	Frequency	Items and Codes
132	Recode		SHORT-STAY HOSPITAL DISCHARGE (based on 6-month recall)*
		6,256	1. Yes
		5,555	2. No
133	J-5		OPERATION PERFORMED DURING STAY
		5,790	1. Yes
		5,828	2. No
		193	3. Unknown
<u>134-139</u>	J-5		OPERATION CODES (See Appendix E)
134-135			<u>OPERATION NUMBER 1</u>
		5,790	00-99.
		6,021	Blank.
136-137			<u>OPERATION NUMBER 2</u>
		504	00-99.
		11,307	Blank.
138-139			<u>OPERATION NUMBER 3</u>
		52	00-99.
		11,759	Blank.
140-144	-		BLANK
145	Recode		HOSPITALIZATION FOR DELIVERY (Based on Operation Codes, Appendix E and reason entered hospital)
		1,470	1. Yes, delivery
		10,341	2. No

*Use weight field 210-218 for annual estimate.

NHIS PUBLIC USE TAPE RECORD
HOSPITAL RECORD

Tape Locations	Item No.	Frequency	Items and Codes
146-177	-		BLANK
178	Master Record		TYPE OF SUBSTRATUM
		1,491	0. Permit
		1,238	1. Area, oversampled for blacks
		9,082	2. Area, not oversampled for blacks
179-181	-		FULL SAMPLE STRATUM IDENTIFIER
182	Master Record		REGION
		2,355	1. Northeast
		3,080	2. Midwest
		4,284	3. South
		2,092	4. West
183	Master Record		GEOGRAPHIC DISTRIBUTION
			<u>MSA Size</u>
		4,694	1. 1,000,000 or more
		3,129	2. 250,000 - 999,999
		673	3. 100,000 - 249,999
		213	4. Under 100,000
		3,102	Blank. Non-MSA
184	-		BLANK
185	Master Record		TYPE OF PSU
		6,090	1. MSA - Self-representing
		2,619	3. MSA - Nonself-representing
		2	4. Non-MSA - Self-representing
		3,100	6. Non-MSA - Nonself-representing
186	Recode		MSA - NON-MSA RESIDENCE
		3,775	1. MSA - Central City
		4,934	2. MSA - Not Central City
		2,972	3. Non-MSA - Nonfarm
		130	4. Non-MSA - Farm
187-189			PSEUDO PSU CODES

NHIS PUBLIC USE TAPE RECORD
HOSPITAL RECORD

Tape Locations	Item No.	Frequency	Items and Codes
190-200			CHRONIC CONDITION PREVALENCE AND INCIDENCE FACTOR (XX.XXXXXXXXX) - character format with implied decimal
			FINAL BASIC WEIGHT
201-209			<u>QUARTER</u>
210-218*			<u>SEMI-ANNUAL (WT/2)</u>
219-227			<u>ANNUAL (WT/4)</u>
			6.5 WEIGHT
228-236			<u>QUARTER, SEMI-ANNUAL AND ANNUAL</u>
			ESTIMATED NIGHTS IN HOSPITAL IN PAST 2 WEEKS
237-245			<u>QUARTER, SEMI-ANNUAL AND ANNUAL</u>
			ESTIMATED NIGHTS IN HOSPITAL IN PAST 12 MONTHS
246-254			<u>QUARTER</u>
255-263			<u>SEMI-ANNUAL</u>
264-272			<u>ANNUAL</u>
			ESTIMATED TOTAL NIGHTS IN HOSPITAL
273-281			<u>QUARTER</u>
282-290*			<u>SEMI-ANNUAL</u>
291-299			<u>ANNUAL</u>
300-335			BLANK

*Use these locations for estimates of hospital discharges and days based on a 6-month period.

D I A G N O S T I C R E C O D E S

NOTES :

National Health Interview Survey

DIAGNOSTIC RECODE A

Acute Conditions

- I. Purpose - Recode A consists of 32 4-digit categories of frequently reported acute conditions. The NHIS routinely publishes acute condition incidence estimates and other related acute condition data using these specific recode categories.
- II. Format and Content - The first digit of this 4-digit recode separates the data into five major condition groups, and the second digit into subcategories of these five. The third and fourth digits are the basic units of the recode.
- III. Definition of Acute Condition - An acute condition is any disease or injury with onset in the 3-month reference period prior to the week of interview except for certain conditions always classified as chronic regardless of onset. Acute conditions must also have either activity restriction or medical attention. Current deliveries, normal or complicated, and current complications of pregnancy and puerperium are always considered acute conditions. The incidence of acute conditions is limited to acute conditions with onset in the 2-week reference period prior to the interview week.

This recode is different from Acute Condition Recode 2, used prior to 1982.

NOTES:

Revised April 30, 1983

National Health Interview Survey
Acute Condition Recode A

Recode Number	Title	ICD-9 Codes
<u>INFECTIVE AND PARASITIC DISEASES</u>		
1001	Common Childhood Diseases	033, 052, 055, 056, 072
1002	Intestinal virus, NOS	008.8
1003	Viral Infections, Unspecified	079.9
1004	Other	(001-136, except for above)*
<u>RESPIRATORY CONDITIONS</u>		
2105	Common Cold	460
2106	Other Acute Upper Respiratory Infections	461-465
2207	Influenza	487
2308	Acute Bronchitis	466
2309	Pneumonia	480-483, 485, 486
2310	Other Respiratory Conditions	470, 475, 478., 0-7,9, 495, 500-508, 510-515, 516., 0,2,3,8,9, 518, 519
<u>DIGESTIVE SYSTEM CONDITIONS</u>		
3411	Dental Conditions	520. ,6-9, 521. ,0-5,7-9, 522, 523, 525
3412	Indigestion, Nausea and Vomiting	536.8, 787.0
3413	Other Digestive Conditions	(520-579, and 787, except for above)*
<u>INJURIES</u>		
4514	Fractures, Dislocations	800-839
4515	Sprains and Strains	840-848
4516	Open Wounds and Lacerations	870-884, 890-894
4517	Contusions and Superficial Injuries	910-929
4518	Other Current Injuries	(800-999, except for above)*

*Excludes ICD codes defined by the NHIS as chronic and ICD codes not used by NHIS.

Revised April 30, 1983

National Health Interview Survey
Acute Condition Recode A

Recode Number	Title	ICD-9 Codes
<u>ALL OTHER ACUTE CONDITIONS</u>		
5619	Eye conditions	360. ,0,3,5,6,8,9, 363. ,0-2,6-9, 364. ,0-6,8,9 368. ,0,2-4,8,9, 370. ,0,4-6,8,9, 371. ,0-2,4-9, 372. ,4,5,8,9, 373. ,0,2,8,9, 374. 375, 376. ,0,1,3,5,6,8,9, 378. ,0-6,8,9, 379. ,0,1,3,4,8,9
5620	Acute Ear Infections	380.1, 381, 382, 383. ,0-2,9, 384.0, 386.3
5621	Other Ear Conditions	380. ,0,2-9, 383.3,8, 384. ,2,8,9, 385, 386. ,0-2,4-9, 387, 388. ,0,1,3-9
5722	Acute Urinary Tract Infections	580, 581, 590, 595. ,0-3,8,9, 597, 598.0, 599.0
5723	Other Urinary Conditions	582-589, 591, 593, 596, 598. ,1-9, 599. ,1-9
5724	Disorders of Menstruation	625.3,4, 626. ,0-6,8,9
5725	Other Disorders of Female Genital Tract	614-624, 625. ,0-2,5-9, 626.7, 628. ,0,2-9, 629
5726	Delivery and Other Conditions of Pregnancy and Puerperium	630-676
5827	Skin Conditions	680-684, 686, 690, 691, 693, (693.2 NHIS code), 694-698, 700-705, 706. ,0,1,3,8,9, 707-709

Revised April 30, 1983

National Health Interview Survey
Acute Condition Recode A

Recode Number	Title	ICD-9 Codes
<u>ALL OTHER ACUTE CONDITIONS (Continued)</u>		
5828	Acute Back, Spine and Neck Pain	723.1, 724.1-3,5
5829	Other Musculoskeletal Conditions	710. ,0-2,4,8,9, 717, 718. ,0-5,8,9, 719, 720.1,2, 722, 723. ,0,2-4,6-9, 724. ,0,4,6-9, 726. ,1,3-9, 727, 728. ,0,1,3,5,7-9, 729. 2-6,8,9, 730. ,0-3,9, 731. ,0,2, 732, 733. ,1,3-9, 739
5930	Headache, excluding migraine	307.8, 784.0**
5931	Fever, NOS	780.6
5932	All Other Acute Conditions	(All remaining ICD Codes)*

*Excludes ICD codes defined by the NHIS as chronic and ICD codes not used by NHIS

**NHIS codes tension headache to 784.0

NOTES :

National Health Interview Survey

DIAGNOSTIC RECODE B

Diseases, Injuries and Impairments

- I. Purpose - Recode B is a listing of diseases and injuries developed by the World Health Assembly (WHA) and modified by the NHIS to include special impairment codes and residual categories. This recode, without NHIS modifications, also appears in Volume 1 of the International Classification of Diseases (1975 Revision).

The recode is intended to provide data users with a classification scheme whereby the NHIS diagnostic categories are more closely grouped according to the standard International Classification of Disease groupings. This recode is primarily used by NHIS to classify conditions reported as causing activity limitation. For data users interested in producing chronic condition prevalence estimates, see also Diagnostic Recode C.

- II. Format and Content - Recode B is a 3-digit recode that can be tabulated in two ways. The first 2 digits represent more general groupings of condition categories and range from 01-57 and 99. For more detailed condition categories, the complete 3-digit number - from 010-570 and 990 - is used.

The NHIS has modified this recode in two ways. First, the NHIS diagnostic coding procedure uses an X-code designation for impairments instead of an ICD number. For this recode, the X-codes are reassigned to the recode categories that would have been used under the ICD scheme. Secondly, residual categories have been added to accommodate all conditions coded by the NHIS. A code with the letter "A" following indicates conditions coded by the NHIS only.

This recode is the same as Recode 5 used prior to 1982.

NOTES:

National Health Interview Survey
Diagnostic Recode B

2-digit Recode	3-digit Recode	Category	NHIS Diagnostic Code Inclusions
01		Intestinal Infectious Diseases	001-009.0,2
	010	Cholera	001
	011	Typhoid fever	002.0
	012	Shigellosis	004
	013	Food poisoning	003, 005
	014	Amoebiasis	006
	015	Intestinal infections due to other specified organism	007, 008
	016	Ill-defined intestinal infections	009.0,2
	019	Residual	002.1-3,9
02		Tuberculosis	010-018, 019-A
	020	Pulmonary tuberculosis	011
	021	Other respiratory tuberculosis	010, 012
	022	Tuberculosis of meninges and central nervous system	013
	023	Tuberculosis of intestines peritoneum and mesenteric glands	014
	024	Tuberculosis of bones and joints	015
	025	Tuberculosis of genitourinary system	016
	029	Residual	017, 018, 019-A

National Health Interview Survey
Diagnostic Recode B

2-digit Recode	3-digit Recode	Category	NHIS Diagnostic Code Inclusions
03	030	Other Bacterial Diseases Plague	020-027, 030-041 020
	031	Brucellosis	023
	032	Leprosy	030
	033	Diphtheria	032
	034	Whooping cough	033
	035	Streptococcal sore throat, scarlatina and erysipelas	034, 035
	036	Meningococcal infection	036
	037	Tetanus	037
	038	Septicaenia	038
	039	Residual	021, 022, 024-027, 031, 039-041
04		Viral Diseases	045-057, 060-066, 070-079
	040	Acute poliomyelitis	045
	041	Smallpox	050
	042	Measles	055
	043	Rubella	056
	044	Yellow fever	060
	045	Arthropod-borne encephalitis	062-064
	046	Viral hepatitis	070
	047	Rabies	071
	048	Trachoma	076
	049	Residual	046-049, 051-054, 057, 061, 065, 066, 072-075, 077-079

National Health Interview Survey
Diagnostic Recode B

2-digit Recode	3-digit Recode	Category	NHIS Diagnostic Code Inclusions
05		Rickettsiosis and Other Arthropod-borne Diseases	080-088
	050	Louse-borne typhus	080
	051	Other rickettsiosis	081-083
	052	Malaria	084
	053	Leishmaniasis	085
	054	Trypanosomiasis	086
	059	Residual	087, 088
06		Venereal Diseases	090-099
	060	Syphilis	090-097
	061	Gonococcal infections	098
	069	Residual	099
07		Other Infectious and Parasitic Diseases and Late Effects of Infectious and Parasitic Diseases	100-104, 110-112, 114-118, 120-136
	070	Non-syphilitic spirochaetal diseases	100-104
	071	Mycosis	110-112, 114-118
	072	Schistosomiasis	120
	073	Echinococcosis	122
	074	Filarial infection and dracontiasis	125
	075	Ancylostomiasis and necatoriasis	126
	076	Other helminthiasis	121, 123, 124, 127-129
	079	Residual	130-136

National Health Interview Survey
Diagnostic Recode B

2-digit Recode	3-digit Recode	Category	NHIS Diagnostic Code Inclusions
08		Malignant Neoplasm of Lip, Oral Cavity and Pharynx	140-149
	080	Malignant neoplasm of lip, oral cavity and pharynx	140-149
09		Malignant of Neoplasm of Digestive Organs and Peritoneum	150-159
	090	Malignant neoplasm of oesophagus	150
	091	Malignant neoplasm of stomach	151
	092	Malignant neoplasm or small intestine, including duodenum	152
	093	Malignant neoplasm of colon	153
	094	Malignant neoplasm of rectum, rectosigmoid junction and anus	154
	095	Malignant neoplasm of liver, specified as primary	155.0
	096	Malignant neoplasm of pancreas	157
	099	Residual	155.1,2, 156, 158, 159
10		Malignant Neoplasm of Respiratory and Inthrathoracic Organs	160-165
	100	Malignant neoplasm of larynx	161
	101	Malignant neoplasm of trachea, brochus and lung	162
	109	Residual	160, 163-165

National Health Interview Survey
Diagnostic Recode B

2-digit Recode	3-digit Recode	Category	NHIS Diagnostic Code Inclusions
11		Malignant Neoplasm of Bone, Connective Tissue, Skin and Breast	170-175
	110	Malignant neoplasm of bone, and articular cartilage	170
	111	Malignant melanoma of skin	172
	112	Other malignant neoplasm of skin	173
	113	Malignant neoplasm of female breast	174
	119	Residual	171, 175
12		Malignant Neoplasm of Genitourinary Organs	179-189
	120	Malignant neoplasm of cervix uteri	180
	121	Malignant neoplasm of placenta	181
	122	Malignant neoplasm of uterus, other and unspecified	179, 182
	123	Malignant neoplasm of ovary and other uterine adnexa	183
	124	Malignant neoplasm of prostate	185
	125	Malignant neoplasm of testis	186
	126	Malignant neoplasm of bladder	188
	129	Residual	184, 187, 189
13		Malignant Neoplasm of Other and Unspecified Sites	190-199
	130	Malignant neoplasm of brain	191
	139	Residual	190, 192-199

National Health Interview Survey
Diagnostic Recode B

2-digit Recode	3-digit Recode	Category	NHIS Diagnostic Code Inclusions
14		Malignant Neoplasm of Lymphatic and Haemopoietic Tissue	200-208
	140	Hodgkin's disease	201
	141	Leukemia	204-208
	149	Residual	200, 202, 203
15		Benign Neoplasm	210-229
	150	Benign neoplasm of skin	216
	151	Benign neoplasm of breast	217
	152	Benign neoplasm of uterus	218, 219
	153	Benign neoplasm of ovary	220
	154	Benign neoplasm of kidney and other urinary organs	223
	155	Benign neoplasm of nervous system	225
	156	Benign neoplasm of thyroid	226
	159	Residual	210-215, 221, 222, 224, 227-229
17		Other and Unspecified Neoplasm	239
	170	Other and unspecified neoplasm	239
18		Endocrine and Metabolic Diseases, Immunity Disorders	240-246, 250-259, 270-279
	180	Disorders of thyroid gland	240-246
	181	Diabetes mellitus	250
	182	Hyperlipoproteinaemia	272.0, 272.1
	183	Obesity of non-endocrine origin	278.0
	189	Residual	251-259, 270, 271, 272.2-9, 273-277, 278.1-4, 8, 279

National Health Interview Survey
Diagnostic Recode B

2-digit Recode	3-digit Recode	Category	NHIS Diagnostic Code Inclusions
19		Nutritional Deficiencies	260-268.0,2,9, 269
	190	Kwashiorkor	260
	191	Nutritional marasmus	261
	192	Other protein-calorie malnutrition	262, 263
	193	Avitaminosis	264-267, 268.0,2,9, 269
20		Disease of Blood and Blood-forming Organs	280-289
	200	Anaemias	280-285
	209	Residual	286-289
21		Mental disorders	290-305, 306.1-5, 307-314, 315.4,5,8,9, 316-A, X10, X14, X19
	210	Senile and presenile organic psychotic conditions	290
	211	Schizophrenic psychoses	295
	212	Affective psychoses	296
	213	Other psychoses	291-294, 297-299
	214	Neurotic and personality disorders	300, 301
	215	Alcohol dependence syndrome	303
	216	Drug dependence	304
	217	Physiological malnutrition arising from mental factors	306.1-5
	218	Mental retardation	X19
	219	Residual	302, 305, 307-314, 315.4,5,8,9,316-A, X10, X14

National Health Interview Survey
Diagnostic Recode B

2-digit Recode	3-digit Recode	Category	NHIS Diagnostic Code Inclusions
22		Disease of the Nervous System	320, 322-325, 330, 331.0-2,8,9, 332-337, 340, 341, 344.1, 345-352, 353.0-4,6,8,9, 354-359, X40, X41.1- .X,.Y, X41.9, (X42-X49, X51-X60, X63, X64)*, X50.9, X61***
220		Meningitis	320, 322
221		Parkinson's disease	332
222		Other degenerative and hereditary disorders of the central nervous system	330, 331.0-2,8,9, 333-336
223		Multiple sclerosis	340
224		Infantile cerebral palsy and other paralytic syndromes	344.1, X40, X41.9, X50.9, (X42-X49, X51-X60, X63, X64)*
225		Epilepsy	345
229		Residual	323-325, 337, 341, 346-352, 353.0- 4,6,8,9, 354-359, X41.1-8,.X,.Y, X61***

*Excludes .0

***Includes all 4th digits except .9

National Health Interview Survey
Diagnostic Recode B

2-digit Recode	3-digit Recode	Category	NHIS Diagnostic Code Inclusions
23		Disorders of the Eye and Adnexa	360-368, 370-379, X00*, (X01, X02, X04)*
	230	Glaucoma	365
	231	Cataract	366
	232	Blindness and low vision	X00*
	233	Conjunctivitis	372.0-3
	234	Disorders of lacrimal system	375
	235	Strabismus and other disorders of binocular eye movements	378
	239	Residual	360-364, 367, 368, 370, 371, 372.4-9, 373, 374, 376, 377, 379, (X01, X02, X04)*
24		Disease of the Ear and Mastoid Process	380-387, 388.0,1,3-9, (X05, X08)*, (X06, X07, X09)*
	240	Otitis media and mastoiditis	381-383
	241	Deafness	(X05, X08)*
	249	Residual	380, 384-387, 388.0,1,3-9, (X06, X07, X09)*
25		Rheumatic Fever and Rheumatic Heart Disease	390, 392-398, 399-A
	250	Acute rheumatic fever	390, 392
	251	Chronic rheumatic heart disease	393-398
	259	Residual	399-A

*Excludes .0

National Health Interview Survey
Diagnostic Recode B

2-digit Recode	3-digit Recode	Category	NHIS Diagnostic Code Inclusions
26		Hypertensive Disease	401-405
	260	Hypertensive heart disease	402, 404
	269	Residual	401, 403, 405
27		Ischaemic Heart Disease	413, 414
	271	Ischaemic heart disease	413, 414
28		Disease of Pulmonary Circulation and Other Forms of Heart Disease	415-417, 420-428, 429.0-5,8,9
	280	Pulmonary embolism	415.1
	281	Cardiac dysrhythmias	427
	289	Residual	415.0, 416, 417, 420-426, 428, 429.0-5,8,9
29		Cerebrovascular Disease	430-435, 437, X50***
	290	Subarachnoid haemorrhage	430
	291	Intracerebral and other intracranial haemorrhage	431, 432
	292	Cerebral infarction	433, 434
	294	Cerebral atherosclerosis	437.0
	299	Residual	435, 437.1-6,8,9, X50***

***Includes all 4th digits except .9

National Health Interview Survey
Diagnostic Recode B

2-digit Recode	3-digit Recode	Category	NHIS Diagnostic Code Inclusions
30		Other Diseases of the Circulatory System	440-444, 446-448, 451-459
	300	Atherosclerosis	440
	301	Arterial embolism and thrombosis	444
	302	Other diseases of arteries, arterioles and capillaries	441-443, 446-448
	303	Phlebitis, thrombophlebitis, venous embolism and thrombosis	451-453
	304	Varicose veins of lower extremities	454
	305	Hemorrhoids	455
	309	Residual	456-459
31		Diseases of the Upper Respiratory Tract	460-465, 470-478, 477.7-A
	310	Acute tonsillitis	463
	311	Acute laryngitis and tracheitis	464
	312	Other acute upper respiratory infections	460-462, 465
	313	Deflected nasal septum and nasal polyps	470, 471
	314	Chronic pharyngitis, nasopharyngitis and sinusitis	472, 473
	315	Chronic diseases of tonsils and adenoids	474
	319	Residual	475-478, 477.7-A

National Health Interview Survey
Diagnostic Recode B

2-digit Recode	3-digit Recode	Category	NHIS Diagnostic Code Inclusions
32		Other Diseases of the Respiratory System	466, 480-483, 485-487, 490-496, 500-508, 510-516, 518, 519, X30***
	320	Acute bronchitis and bronchiolitis	466
	321	Pneumonia	480-483, 485, 486
	322	Influenza	487
	323	Bronchitis, chronic and unspecified, emphysema and asthma	490-493
	324	Bronchietasis	494
	325	Other chronic obstructive pulmonary disease	495, 496
	326	Pneumonconiosis and other lung disease due to external agents	500-508
	327	Pleurisy	511
	329	Residual	510, 512-516, 518, 519, X30***
33		Diseases of Oral Cavity, Salivary Glands and Jaws	520.3,4,6-9, 521-523, 525-529, X92
	330	Diseases of teeth and supporting structures	520.3,4,6-9, 521-523, 525, X92
	331	Disease of the jaw	526
	339	Residual	527-529

***Includes all 4th digits except .9

National Health Interview Survey
Diagnostic Recode B

2-digit Recode	3-digit Recode	Category	NHIS Diagnostic Code Inclusions
34		Diseases of Other Parts of the Digestive System	530-537, 540-543, 550-553, 555-558, 560, 562, 564-579
	340	Diseases of oesophagus	530
	341	Ulcer of stomach and duodenum	531-533
	342	Appendicitis	540-543
	343	Hernia of abdominal cavity	550-553
	344	Intestinal obstruction without mention of hernia	560
	345	Diverticula of intestine	562
	346	Other functional digestive disorders	564
	347	Chronic liver disease and cirrhosis	571
	348	Cholelithiasis and cholecystitis	574-575.1
	349	Residual	534-537, 555-558, 565-570, 572, 573, 575.0, 2-6, 8, 9, 576-579
35		Diseases of Urinary System	580-599, X31***, X62
	350	Nephritis, nephrotic syndrome and nephrosis	580-589
	351	Infections of kidney	590
	352	Urinary calculus	592, 594
	353	Cystitis	595
	359	Residual	X31***, X62, 591, 593, 596-599

***Includes all 4th digits except .9

National Health Interview Survey
Diagnostic Recode B

2-digit Recode	3-digit Recode	Category	NHIS Diagnostic Code Inclusions
36		Disease of Male Genital Organs	600-608
	360	Hyperplasia of prostate	600
	361	Hydrocele	603
	362	Redundant prepuce and phimosis	605
	363	Infertility, male	606
	369	Residual	601, 602, 604, 607, 608
37		Diseases of Female Genital Organs	610, 611, 614-629, X32***
	370	Diseases of breast	610, 611, X32***
	371	Salpingitis and oophoritis	614.0-2
	372	Inflammatory diseases of pelvic cellular tissue and peritoneum	614.3-9
	373	Inflammatory diseases of uterus, vagina and vulva	615, 616
	374	Uterovaginal prolapse	618
	375	Menstrual disorders	626.0-5
	376	Infertility, female	628
	379	Residual	617, 619-625, 626.6-9, 627, 629
38		Abortion	630-639
	380	Spontaneous abortion	634
	381	Legally induced abortion	635
	382	Illegally induced abortion	636
	389	Residual	630-633, 637-639

***Includes all 4th digits except .9

National Health Interview Survey
Diagnostic Recode B

2-digit Recode	3-digit Recode	Category	NHIS Diagnostic Code Inclusions
39		Direct Obstetric Causes	640-646, 651-676
	390	Haemorrhage of pregnancy and childbirth	640, 641, 666
	391	Toxaemia of pregnancy	642.4-9, 643
	392	Infections of genitourinary tract in pregnancy	646.6
	393	Obstructed labor	660
	394	Complications of the puerperium	670-676
	399	Residual	642.0-3, 644, 645, 646.0-5, 7-9, 651-659, 661-665, 667-669
40		Indirect Obstetric Causes	647, 648
	400	Indirect obstetric causes	647, 648
41		Normal Delivery	650
	410	Normal delivery	650
42		Diseases of Skin and Subcutaneous Tissue	680-686, 690-693, 693.2-A, 694-698, 700-709
	420	Infections of skin and subcutaneous tissue	680-686
	429	Residual	690-693, 693.2-A, 694-698, 700-709

National Health Interview Survey
Diagnostic Recode B

2-digit Recode	3-digit Recode	Category	NHIS Diagnostic Code Inclusions
43		Disease of the Musculoskeletal System and Connective Tissue	710-712, 714-727, 728.0,1,3,5,8,9, 729-733, 739, (X20-X29, X33-X35, X73-X78)***, (X70, X79, X90, X93)***, X80, X84-X86, X89
	430	Rheumatoid arthritis, except spine	714
	431	Other arthropathies	710-712, 715, 716
	432	Other disorders of joints	717-719
	433	Ankylosing spondylitis	720.0
	434	Other dorsopathies	720.1-724, X80
	435	Rheumatism, excluding the back	725-727, 728.0,1 3,5,8,9, 729, X86
	436	Osteomyelitis, periostitis and other infections involving bone	730
	437	Acquired deformities of limbs	(X20-X29, X33-X35, X73-X78)***
	439	Residual	731-733, 739, (X70, X79, X90, X93)***, X84, X85, X89

***Includes all 4th digits except .9

National Health Interview Survey
Diagnostic Recode B

2-digit Recode	3-digit Recode	Category	NHIS Diagnostic Code Inclusions
44		Congenital Anomalies	742.2,4,5,8,9, 744.4, 745-748, 750.2-9, 751, 752, 753.1-9, 754.0,1, 756.4-9, 757, 758.1-9, 759.0- 6,8, (X20-X29, X33- X35, X70, X73, X74, X76-X78, X93)**, X71.9, X75.9, (X30-X32, X41, X79, X90)**
	440	Spina bifida and hydrocephalus	X71.9
	441	Other deformities of central nervous system	742.2,4,5,8,9
	442	Congenital anomalies of heart and circulatory system	745-747
	443	Cleft palate and cleft lip	749, X91.9
	444	Other deformities of digestive system	750.2-9, 751
	445	Undescended testicle	752.5
	446	Congenital dislocation of hip	X75.9
	447	Other congenital anomalies of musculoskeletal system	(X20-X29, X33-X35, X70, X73, X74, X76-X78, X93)**, 754.0,1, 756.4-9
	449	Residual	744.4, 748, 752.0-4, 6-9, 753.1-9, 757, 758.1-9, 759.0-6,8, (X30-X32, X41, X79, X90)**

**Includes 4th digit .9 only.

National Health Interview Survey
Diagnostic Recode B

2-digit Recode	3-digit Recode	Category	NHIS Diagnostic Code Inclusions
45		Certain Conditions Originating in the Perinatal Period	760, 761.0-5,7-9, 762-778, 779.0-5,8,9, X61.9
	450	Maternal conditions affecting fetus or newborn	760
	451	Obstetric complications affecting fetus or newborn	761.0-5,7-9, 762, 763
	452	Slow fetal growth, fetal malnutrition and immaturity	764, 765
	453	Birth trauma	767, X61.9
	454	Hypoxia, birth asphyxia and other respiratory conditions	768-770
	455	Haemolytic disease of fetus or newborn	773
	459	Residual	766, 771, 772, 774-778, 779.0-5,8,9
46		Signs, Symptoms and Ill-Defined Conditions	780, 781.0-4,6,7,9, 782, 783.0,2-6,9 784-797, 799, 799.5-A, X11, X12
	460	Pyrexia of unknown origin	780.6
	461	Symptoms involving heart	785.0-3
	462	Renal colic	788.0
	463	Retention of urine	788.2
	464	Abdominal pain	789.0
	465	Senility without mention of psychosis	797
	467	Respiratory failure	799.1

National Health Interview Survey
Diagnostic Recode B

2-digit Recode	3-digit Recode	Category	NHIS Diagnostic Code Inclusions
46	469	Residual	780.0-5,7-9, 781.0-4,6, 7,9, 782, 783.0,2-6,9, 784.4-6,9, 786, 787, 788.1,3,4-9, 789.1-5,9, 790-796, 799.0,2-4,8,9, 799.5-A, X11, X12
47	470	Fractures Fracture of skull and face	800-829 800-804
	471	Fracture of neck and trunk	805-809
	472	Fracture of humerus, radius and ulna	812, 813
	473	Fracture of neck of femur	820
	474	Fracture of other parts of femur	821
	475	Fracture of tibia, fibula and ankle	823,824
	476	Other fractures of limbs	810-811, 814-819, 822, 825, 829
	479	Residual	826-828
48		Dislocations, Sprains and Strains	830-848
	480	Dislocations, sprains, and strains	830-848
49		Intracranial and Internal Injuries Including Nerves	850-854, 860-869, 950-957, X00.0, X05.0, X08.0, (X41-X49, X51-X60, X63, X64)*****
	490	Concussion	850
	491	Other intracranial injuries	851-854, 950, 951, X00.0, X05.0, X08.0
	499	Residual	860-869, 952-957, (X41-X49,X51-X60, X63, X64)*****

*****Includes 4th digit .0 only.

National Health Interview Survey
Diagnostic Recode B

2-digit Recode	3-digit Recode	Category	NHIS Diagnostic Code Inclusions
50		Open Wounds and Injury to Blood Vessels	870-884*****, 890-894, 900-904
	500	Open wound of eye, ear and head	870-873*****
	501	Open wound of upper limb	880-884
	502	Open wound of lower limb	890-894
	509	Residual	874-879, 900-904
51		Effects of Foreign Body Entering Through Orifice	930-939
	510	Effects of foreign body entering through orifice	930-939
52		Burns	940-949
	520	Burn confined to eye and adnexa	940
	521	Burn of wrist and hand	944
	529	Residual	941-943, 945-949
53		Poisonings and Toxic Effects	977.9*****, 979, 988, 989*****
	530	Medicinal agents	977.9*****, 979
	539	Residual	988, 989*****
54		Complications of Medical and Surgical Care	996-999
	540	Complications of medical and surgical care	996-999

*****871.3 is not used by NHIS. Instead these conditions are assigned to the appropriate visual impairment X-code.

*****Anything classifiable to 960-978 is coded by NHIS to 977.9.

*****Anything classifiable to 980-987 is coded by NHIS to 989.9.

National Health Interview Survey
Diagnostic Recode B

2-digit Recode	3-digit Recode	Category	NHIS Diagnostic Code Inclusions
55		Other Injuries, Early Complications of Trauma	910-929, 959, 990-995
	550	Other injuries, early complications of trauma	910-929, 959, 990-995
56		Late Effects of Injuries, of Poisonings, of Toxic Effects and of Other External Causes	905.0-5, 906, 907, 908.0-5,9, 909.2,4
	560	Late effects of injuries, of poisonings, of toxic effects and of other external causes	905.0-5, 906, 907, 908.0-5,9, 909.2,4
57		Present Effects of Injuries, NEC	X01.0, X02.0, X03.0, X06.0, X07.0, X09.0
	570	Present effects of injuries, NEC	X01.0, X02.0, X03.0, X06.0, X07.0, X09.0
99		Residual, All Other Conditions	<u>All other not listed codes</u>
	990	Residual, all other conditions	<u>All other not listed codes</u>

NOTES:

National Health Interview Survey

DIAGNOSTIC RECODE C

Chronic Conditions and Impairments

- I. Purpose - Recode C consists of 134 3-digit categories of chronic conditions and impairments. The categories correspond to the conditions that appear on the six (6) NHIS check-lists of selected chronic conditions. These categories are used by NHIS to produce prevalence estimates of selected chronic conditions.
- II. Format and Content - The first digit of this 3-digit recode identifies the specific chronic condition check-list number, i.e., 1-6, that corresponds to the number of the list used on the NHIS questionnaire. The second and third digits are numbered sequentially within each of the 6 lists. Each condition group contains between 15 and 43 2-digit categories.
- III. Definition of Chronic Condition and Impairment - In most cases, a chronic condition or an impairment is any departure from normal health with onset more than 3 months from date of interview. Certain chronic conditions and impairments are classified as chronic, however, regardless of date of onset. Complications of pregnancy are always classified as acute. All chronic conditions and impairments are counted whether or not they necessitated activity restriction or medical care. Impairments coded with an "X" in the first digit are, by definition, chronic.

This recode is different from Chronic Condition Recode 3, used prior to 1982.

NOTES

Revised April 30, 1983

National Health Interview Survey
Chronic Condition Recode C

Recode Number	Title	ICD Inclusion as modified by the NHIS
LIST I: <u>SELECTED SKIN AND MUSCULOSKELETAL CONDITIONS</u>		
101	Arthritis	711. ,0,9, 712. ,8,9, 714-716, 720.0, 721
102	Rheumatism, unspecified	729.0
103	Gout, including gouty arthritis	274
104	Sciatica (including lumbago)	724.2,3
105	Intervertebral disc disorders	722
106	Bone spur/tendinitis NOS	726. ,9
107	Disorders of bone or cartilage	730. ,0-3,9, 731. ,0,2, 732, 733
108	Bunion	727.1
109	Bursitis, NEC	726.0-8, 727. ,0,2-9
110	Sebaceous skin cyst	706.2
111	Acne	706.0,1
112	Psoriasis	696
113	Dermatitis	690-694 (693.2 NHIS code)
114	Dry (itching) skin NEC	698.9
115	Chronic ulcer of skin	707
116	Ingrown nails	703.0
117	Corns and calluses	700
118	Benign neoplasms of the skin	216
119	Malignant neoplasms of the skin	172, 173

Revised April 30, 1983

National Health Interview Survey
Chronic Condition Recode C

Recode Number	Title	ICD Inclusion as modified by the NHIS
LIST II: <u>IMPAIRMENTS</u>		
201	Blind - Both eyes	X00
202	Other Visual Impairment	X01-X03
203	Deaf - Both ears	X05
204	Other Hearing Impairments	X06-X09
205	Stammering and Stuttering	X10
206	Other Speech Impairments	X11
207	Impairment of Sensation	X12
208	Mental Retardation	X19
	Absence Upper Extremities	
209	Both Arms/Hands	X20,X21
210	One Hand/Arm	X23,X24
211	Fingers - One or Both Hands	X22,X25
	Absence Lower Extremities	
212	One or Both Legs	X26,X28
213	Feet/Toes - One or Both Limbs	X27,X29
214	Absence Lung	X30
215	Kidney	X31
216	Breast	X32
217	Bone, Joint,	
	Muscle of extremity	X34
218	Tips of Fingers, Toes	X35
	Paralysis of Extremities - Complete	
219	Entire Body	X40
220	One Side of Body - Hemiplegia	X41
221	Both Legs - Paraplegia	X46
222	Other paralysis	X42-X45, X47-X49
	Paralysis of Extremities - Partial	
223	Cerebral Palsy	X50
224	One Side of Body Only-Hemiparesis	X51
225	Legs - Both or Paraparesis	X56
226	Other paralysis	X52-X55, X57-X59

Revised June 12, 1984

National Health Interview Survey
Chronic Condition Recode C

Recode Number	Title	ICD Inclusion as modified by the NHIS
LIST II: <u>IMPAIRMENTS</u> (Continued)		
227	Paralysis - Complete or Partial - Other site	X60-X64
228	Deformity/Orthopedic Impairment: Back Curvature or other deformity of back or spine	X70
229	Orthopedic Impairment	X80
230	Spina Bifida	X71
Other Upper Extremities		
231	Hands, Fingers only	X74
232	Orthopedic Impairment-Shoulder(s)	X84
233	Other	X73
Lower Extremities		
234	Flatfeet	X77
235	Clubfoot	X78
236	Other	X75,X76,X85,X86
237	Other Deformities/ Orthopedic Impairment	X79,X89
238	Cleft Palate	X91
239	Color Blindness	368.5
240	Tinnitus	388.3
241	Cataracts	366
242	Glaucoma	365
243	Diseases of Retina	361,362. ,1-9

Revised April 30, 1983

National Health Interview Survey
Chronic Condition Recode C

Recode Number	Title	ICD Inclusion as modified by the NHIS
LIST III: <u>SELECTED DIGESTIVE CONDITIONS</u>		
301	Gallbladder stones	574
302	Liver diseases including cirrhosis	571, 572, 573. ,0,3-9
303	Gastric ulcer	531
304	Duodenal ulcer	532
305	Peptic ulcer	533
306	Hernia of abdominal cavity	550-553
307	Disease of the esophagus	530
308	Gastritis and duodenitis	535
309	Indigestion	536.8
310	Other functional disorders of stomach and digestive system	536 (except .8), 787
311	Enteritis and colitis	555, 556, 558
312	Spastic colon	564.1
313	Diverticula of intestines	562
314	Constipation	564.0
315	Other stomach and intestinal disorders	534, 537, 560, 569
316	Malignant neoplasms of stomach, intestines, colon, and rectum	151-154

Revised April 30, 1983

National Health Interview Survey
Chronic Condition Recode C

Recode Number	Title	ICD Inclusion as modified by the NHIS
LIST IV: <u>SELECTED CONDITIONS OF THE GENITOURINARY, NERVOUS, ENDOCRINE, METABOLIC AND BLOOD AND BLOOD FORMING SYSTEMS</u>		
401	Goiter	240, 241, 242.0-3
402	Other disorders of the thyroid	242.4,8,9, 243-246
403	Diabetes	250
404	Anemias	280-285
405	Epilepsy	345
406	Migraine headache	346
407	Other headache (excludes tension headache)	784.0
408	Neuralgia or neuritis, unspecified	729.2
409	Kidney stones	592
410	Kidney infections	590
411	Other kidney trouble, NEC	581-583, 593
412	Bladder infections	595. ,0-3,8,9
413	Other disorders of bladder	594.1, 596
414	Diseases of prostate	600-602 (ex 601.4)
415	Multiple sclerosis	340
416	Inflammatory disease of female genital organs	614-616
417	Non-Inflammatory disease of female genital organs	620-624
418	Menstrual disorders	626

Revised May 1, 1983

National Health Interview Survey
Chronic Condition Recode C

Recode Number	Title	ICD Inclusion as modified by the NHIS
LIST IV: <u>SELECTED CONDITIONS OF THE GENITOURINARY, NERVOUS, ENDOCRINE, METABOLIC AND BLOOD AND BLOOD FORMING SYSTEMS</u> (Continued)		
419	Other disorders of female genital organs	617-619, 625, 627, 628. ,0,2-9, 629. 0,1,8
420	Female trouble, NOS	629. ,9
421	Malignant neoplasm of breast - female	174
422	Malignant neoplasms of female genital organs	179-184
423	Malignant neoplasm of prostate	185
424	Benign neoplasm of breast - female	217
425	Benign neoplasms of female genital organs	218-221

Revised April 30, 1983

National Health Interview Survey
Chronic Condition Recode C

Recode Number	Title	ICD Inclusion as modified by the NHIS
LIST V: <u>SELECTED CIRCULATORY CONDITIONS</u>		
501	Rheumatic fever with or without heart disease	390, 392-398, 399 (NHIS code only)
502	Ischemic heart disease	413, 414 (NHIS includes 410-412 and 429.6 in 414)
	Heart rhythm disorders	
503	Tachycardia or rapid heart	427.0-3, 785.0
504	Heart murmurs	785.2
505	Other and unspecified heart rhythm disorders	427. ,4-6,8,9, 785.1
506	Congenital heart disease	745, 746
507	Other selected diseases of heart (excludes hypertension)	415-417, 420. ,9, 421. ,0,9, 422. ,9, 423, 424, 425. .0- 5,9, 426, 428, 429. , 0-5,8,9
508	High blood pressure (hypertension)	401-405
509	Cerebrovascular disease	430-435, 437 (NHIS includes 436 and 438 in 437)
510	Hardening of the arteries	440
511	Aneurysm	441. ,0-6, 442
512	Phlebitis, thrombophlebitis	451
513	Varicose veins of lower extremities	454
514	Hemorrhoids	455
515	Poor circulation	459. ,8,9

Revised April 30, 1983

National Health Interview Survey
Chronic Condition Recode C

Recode Number	Title	ICD Inclusion as modified by the NHIS
LIST VI: <u>SELECTED RESPIRATORY CONDITIONS</u>		
601	Chronic Bronchitis	490, 491
602	Asthma	493
603	Hay fever/allergic rhinitis without asthma	477 (477.7 NHIS code)
604	Nasal polyps	471
605	Chronic sinusitis	473
606	Deviated Nasal Septum	470
607	Chronic disease of tonsils and adenoids	474
608	Chronic laryngitis	476
609	Emphysema	492
610	Pleurisy	511
611	Pneumoconiosis and asbestosis	500-505
612	Tuberculosis (pulmonary)	011, 019 (NHIS code)
613	Malignant neoplasms of lung and bronchus	162. ,2-9
614	Other diseases of lung	515, 518
615	Malignant neoplasms of other respiratory sites	160, 161, 162.0, 163
999	ALL OTHER SELECTED CHRONIC CONDITIONS	All remaining ICD and NHIS codes*

*Excludes always acute codes and ICD codes not used by NHIS.

HEALTH INTERVIEW SURVEY - 1994
TABULATION SPECIFICATIONS AND WEIGHTING

INTRODUCTION

The tabulation specifications which were used to tabulate data for the "Current Estimates" report are attached. A brief description of the key points of each tabulation used to prepare each table is shown on the attached chart.

The weight for an event occurring or not occurring (binomial 1 or 0) uses the basic weights for the person. Similarly, if the event has occurred and when it occurs it can have a frequency of 1, 2, 3, etc.; the weight shown includes the cross product of the person's basic weight times the frequency. For instance, if a person is injured and requires 5 days in bed, the weight shown in the appropriate table is the person's basic weight times 5.

In most instances in the Health Interview Survey there are three reference periods used to make estimates: the 2-week reference period, 6 months, and 12 months. In producing estimates two types of weights are presented in the tape records; the basic weight and the 6.5 weight.

The 6.5 weight is a modification of the basic weight obtained by multiplying the basic weight by 6.5. The figure 6.5 indicates that 2 weeks multiplied by 6.5 represents 13 weeks or one calendar quarter. Summing over 4 calendar quarters equals 52 weeks. The basic weight for a quarter is 4 times the size of the annual weight (divide basic quarter weight by 4 to get annual weight).

To illustrate the use of reference periods, suppose we have a person whose basic weight is 6,000 in the tape for the quarter. This person's annual weight is $6,000/4 = 1,500$. His 6.5 weight is obtained by multiplying $6,000 \times 6.5$ to obtain the 6.5 weight of 39,000. Therefore, if this person had 2 doctor visits occurring in the 2-week reference period, his contribution to the annual volume of doctor visits would have been $39,000 \times 2$ or 78,000. If he had been discharged from a hospital once during the 6 months prior to interview, his contribution to the annual volume of hospital discharges would be $1,500 \times 2$ or 3,000 for the full year's sample, or $6,000 \times 2$ or 12,000 for a sample of one quarter. If the reference period was 12 months, the weight for the year's sample is 1,500 (or 6,000 for the quarterly sample).

The weights are presented in character format in the tape in Locations 190-236. Locations from 237 onward contain cross products of variables with frequency greater than one. For instance, the number of restricted activity days in the Person Record Locations 98-99 may be 5 days. As a convenience in tabulation, these 5 days have been multiplied times the appropriate weight (the 6.5 weight in Locations 228-236) to obtain the weighted estimate of restricted activity days in Locations 237-245.

A table summarizing these tape locations and their uses follows:

SUMMARY OF WEIGHTS IN THE 1994 NHIS PERSON RECORD

<u>Tape location</u>	<u>Name of Weight Field</u>	<u>Notes:</u>
190-200	CHRONIC CONDITION PREVALENCE AND INCIDENCE FACTOR	Multiply by final basic weight to obtain prevalence of chronic conditions
FINAL BASIC WEIGHT		
201-209	<u>QUARTER</u>	Use <u>one</u> quarter of data
210-218	<u>SEMI-ANNUAL</u>	Use <u>two</u> quarters of data
219-227	<u>ANNUAL</u>	Use entire data file
228-236	<u>6.5 WEIGHT</u> Content of field is 6.5 times the Quarter Weight.	Use for event data with 2-week recall period
237-245	ESTIMATED RESTRICTED ACTIVITY DAYS (BASED ON TWO-WEEK RECALL) Content of field is number of restricted activity days times 6.5 Weight.	Use one quarter to produce estimate for the quarter; use entire file to produce annual estimate. This field is already weighted.

SPECIFICATIONS FOR RECREATING THE CURRENT ESTIMATES TABLES

The accompanying instructions show procedures for deriving estimates from Health Interview Survey data tapes. The publication, "Current Estimates", for the year 1994 is used as a source for the examples.

Instructions for inclusions and all appropriate weights are included for each table specified. In cases where classifications such as "other" may not be clear or where several fields must be specified to produce a single variable, for example, persons injured, the variables needed will be listed.

NOTES:

TABULATING DATA FOR CURRENT ESTIMATES TABLES

TABLE NUMBERS	ITEMS	TAPE LOCATIONS	CODES
ANNUAL ESTIMATES			
1-15	<u>Incidence of Acute Conditions</u>		
<u>Inclusions:</u>			
	Condition records	1-2	30
	Acute	107	2
	Onset in 2 weeks	108	1
<u>Use:</u>			
1-5	Acute Condition Recode A	100-103	1001-5932
	Denominator for rates is population: see Table 78 specifications		
11-15	Restrict numerator to medically attended Denominator is all acute conditions	110	1
<u>Weight:</u>			
	(2 week reference) inflated by 6.5 to obtain a quarterly estimate. Annual estimate is the sum of 4 quarterly estimates.	228-236	
16-25	<u>Restricted Activity Days Associated With Acute Conditions</u>		
<u>Inclusions:</u>			
	Condition records	1-2	30
	Acute	107	2
<u>Use:</u>			
16-20	Acute Condition Recode A	100-103	1001-5932
	Denominator is population: see Table 78 specifications		
<u>Weight:</u>			
	2 week restricted activity days	237-245	

TABULATING DATA FOR CURRENT ESTIMATES TABLES

TABLE NUMBERS	ITEMS	TAPE LOCATIONS	CODES
ANNUAL ESTIMATES			
26-35	<u>Bed Days Associated with Acute Conditions</u>		
<u>Inclusions:</u>			
	Condition records	1-2	30
	Acute	107	2
<u>Use:</u>			
26-30	Acute Condition Recode A Denominator is population: see Table 78 specifications	100-103	1001-5932
<u>Weight:</u>			
	2 week bed days	246-254	
36-45	<u>Work-Loss Days Associated with Acute Conditions</u>		
<u>Inclusions:</u>			
	Condition records	1-2	30
	Acute	107	2
<u>Use:</u>			
36-40	Acute Condition Recode A Denominator is currently employed population: see Table 78 specifications	100-103	1001-5932
<u>Weight:</u>			
	2 week work-loss days	255-263	

TABULATING DATA FOR CURRENT ESTIMATES TABLES

TABLE NUMBERS	ITEMS	TAPE LOCATIONS	CODES
ANNUAL ESTIMATES			
46-49	<u>School-Loss Days Associated with Acute Conditions</u> <u>Inclusions:</u> Condition records 1-2 30 Acute 107 2		
<u>Use:</u>			
46-47	Acute Condition Recode A 100-103 1001-5932 Denominator is population ages 5-17 see Table 78 specifications		
<u>Weight:</u>			
	2 week school-loss days 264-272		
50	<u>Acute Conditions per Quarter</u> Use specifications for Tables 1-10 5 1, 2, 3 or 4 but also use processing quarter		
51-52	<u>Episodes of Persons Injured</u> <u>Inclusions:</u> Condition records 1-2 30 Onset in 2 weeks 108 1 First injury 128 1 and Acute Condition Recode A 100-103 4514-4518 (injuries) or Impairments due to injury 93 X 96 0		

TABULATING DATA FOR CURRENT ESTIMATES TABLES

TABLE NUMBERS	ITEMS	TAPE LOCATIONS	CODES
ANNUAL ESTIMATES			
51-52	<u>Episodes of Persons Injured</u> - continued		
	<u>Use:</u>		
	Type/place of accident (all included records)		
	Moving motor vehicle involved (total)	134	1
	and	130	1-9
	(traffic)	134	1
	and	130	3
	(no)	134	2,4
	At work (yes)	131	1
	(no)	131	2
	Place of accident (home)	130	1-2
	(street)	130	3
	(industrial place)	130	5
	(other)	130	4,6-8
51	Denominator is population: (For person injured at work denominator is 18+ population)		
	see specifications for Table 78		
	<u>Weight:</u>		
	6.5 weight (2 week reference)	228-236	
53-54	<u>Restricted Activity Days Associated with Persons Injured</u>		
	<u>Use:</u>		
	Specifications for Tables 51-52 except weight for days, delete specification 108:1 and change specification so that 128:1		
	<u>Weight:</u>	237-245	
55-56	<u>Bed Days Associated with Persons Injured</u>		
	<u>Use:</u>		
	Specifications for Tables 51-52 except weight for days, delete specification 108:1 and change specifications so that 128:1		
	<u>Weight:</u>	246-254	

TABULATING DATA FOR CURRENT ESTIMATES TABLES

TABLE NUMBERS	ITEMS	TAPE LOCATIONS	CODES
ANNUAL ESTIMATES			
57-66	<u>Prevalence of Selected Chronic Conditions</u>		
<u>Inclusions:</u>			
	Condition records	1-2	30
	Chronic	107	1
<u>Use:</u>			
	Control on chronic condition list asked and use only Chronic Condition Recode C with location 104 equal to value in location 92	92 104-106	1,2,3,4,5 or 6
<u>Weight:</u>			
57-61	Chronic condition factor Multiplied by final basic weight Denominator is population: see specification for Table 78	190-200 219-227	
67-68	<u>Limitation of Activity Due to Chronic Conditions</u>		
<u>Inclusions:</u>			
	Person records	1-2	20
<u>Use:</u>			
	LA-1 Unable to perform major activity	71	1
	LA-2 Limited in kind/amount of major activity	71	2
	LA-3 Limited in other activity	71	3
	LA-4 Not Limited (includes unknowns)	71	4
<u>Weight:</u>			
67	Denominator for percent distribution is population.	219-227	

TABULATING DATA FOR CURRENT ESTIMATES TABLES

TABLE NUMBERS	ITEMS	TAPE LOCATIONS	CODES
ANNUAL ESTIMATES			
69	<u>Person Disability Days</u>		
	<u>Inclusions:</u>		
	Person records	1-2	20
	<u>Weight:</u>		
	Restricted activity days	237-245	
	Bed days	246-254	
	School-loss days (ages 5-17)	264-272	
	Work-loss days (for currently employed)	255-263	
	Denominator for rates is appropriate population: see specifications for Table 78		
70	<u>Respondent Assessed Health Status</u>		
	<u>Inclusions:</u>		
	Person records	1-2	20
	<u>Weight:</u>		
71	<u>Physician Contacts: Place and Rate</u>		
	<u>Inclusions:</u>		
	Doctor Visit records	1-2	40
	<u>Use:</u>		
	Place of visit	103	1-8(9)
	<u>Weight:</u>		
	6.5 weight (2 week)	228-236	
	Denominator for rate columns are population: see specifications for Table 78		

Codes in parenthesis are unknowns which are included in totals but not in specific categories.

TABULATING DATA FOR CURRENT ESTIMATES TABLES

TABLE NUMBERS	ITEMS	TAPE LOCATIONS	CODES
ANNUAL ESTIMATES			
72	<u>Interval Since Physician Contact</u>		
	<u>Inclusions:</u>		
	Person records	1-2	20
	<u>Use:</u>		
	Interval since doctor seen	115	0-4 (5)
	NOTE: 5 years and over (includes never)	115	0,4
	<u>Weight:</u>	219-227	
73-74	<u>Short Stay Hospital Episodes</u> (12 Month reference)		
	<u>Inclusions:</u>		
	Person records	1-2	20
	<u>Use:</u>		
	To define number of episodes	122-123	
	To define non-delivery episodes	127-128	
	<u>Weights:</u>		
73	Final basic weight	219-227	
	Denominator for percent distribution is population		
75-76	<u>Short Stay Hospital Episode Days</u>		
	<u>Inclusions:</u>		
	Person records	1-2	20
	<u>Use:</u>		
	To define number of episodes	122-123	
	To define non-delivery episodes	127-128	

Codes in parenthesis are unknowns which are included in totals but not in specific categories.

TABULATING DATA FOR CURRENT ESTIMATES TABLES

TABLE NUMBERS	ITEMS	TAPE LOCATIONS	CODES
ANNUAL ESTIMATES			
<u>Weight:</u>			
	Short stay hospital episode days (all episodes)*	124-126 x	219-227
	Short stay hospital episode days (excluding deliveries)*	129-131 x	219-227
75	Denominator for rates is population with appropriate number of episodes (from Table 74)		
77	<u>Short Stay Hospital Discharges, Days,</u> <u>Average Length of Stay (ALOS)</u> <u>(6 month reference)</u>		
<u>Inclusions:</u>			
	Hospital Records with	1-2 132	50 1
<u>Use:</u>			
	All specified records for hospitalizations for all reasons		
	Hospitalizations for deliveries	145	1
<u>Weight:</u>			
	Short stay hospital discharges	210-218	
	Short stay hospital days	282-290	
	Denominator for discharge rate is population		
	Denominator for ALOS is discharges		
78	<u>Population</u>		
<u>Inclusions:</u>			
	Person records	1-2	20
<u>Use:</u>			
	All records for total population		
	Currently employed population	75	1-3
<u>Weight:</u>			
		219-227	→

*These weights reflect a modification from previous years (1982-1990).

APPENDIX A

CODES FOR TYPES OF SPECIAL PLACES

CODES TYPES

I. SPECIFIED INSTITUTIONS

Correctional Institutions

- 11-----State and Federal penitentiaries, prisons, and reformatories
- 11-----State and Federal prison farms and camps
- 11-----County and city jails, workhouses, penitentiaries
- 11-----County and city prison farms and camps
- 11-----Federal detention headquarters
- 12-----State and Federal training or industrial schools
- 12-----County and municipal training or industrial schools
- 12-----Private schools for delinquents, such as "House of the Good Shepherd," "Boys Town," etc.

Mental Institutions

- 21-----Homes and training schools for mentally handicapped
- 21-----Homes, training schools, colonies, and villages for epileptics
- 21-----State, Federal, county and city hospitals for mentally ill
- 21-----Private hospitals and sanitariums for mentally ill
- 22-----Hospitals and centers for the treatment of alcoholics and drug addicts
- 23-----Veterans Administration mental hospitals

Home for the Aged, Infirm, and Needy

- 31-----Orphan asylums
- 31-----Children's homes
- 32-----County homes, almshouses, poor farms, etc.
- 33-----Fraternal or religious homes for the aged
- 34-----Commercial homes for the aged
- 35-----Homes and schools for the blind
- 36-----Homes and schools for the deaf
- 37-----Hospital or resident schools, orthopedic hospitals, and homes for the crippled
- 38-----Soldiers' and sailors' homes
- 39-----Veterans Administration homes (domiciliary care)

- 40-----Nursing, Convalescent, and Rest Homes

Other Hospitals and Homes Providing Specialized Care

- 51-----Tuberculosis sanitariums
- 52-----Veterans Administration tuberculosis hospitals
- 53-----Homes for incurables
- 53-----Hospices
- 54-----Chronic and cancer hospitals
- 55-----Maternity homes for unmarried mothers
- 56-----Detention and receiving homes
- 57-----Hospitals and homes for other specialized care

APPENDIX A

CODES FOR TYPES OF SPECIAL PLACES (continued)

CODES	TYPES
-------	-------

II. OTHER SPECIAL PLACES

Other Special Places

61-----Veterans Administration General Medical and Surgical Hospitals
62-----Facilities for the Treatment of the Physically Ill

This type of facility treats physical disorders and is one in which the patient stays for a relatively short period of time. Examples of this type of special place are:

1. General or emergency hospital; children's hospital;
maternity hospital
2. Infirmary

71-----Hotels, transient-type
71-----Motels, transient-type
71-----Tourist camp or court (like motels except units are detached),
transient-type
72-----Hotels, nontransient type
72-----Motels, nontransient type
72-----Tourist camp or court, nontransient type
73-----YMCA, YMHA, YWCA, transient type
74-----YMCA, YMHA, YWCA, nontransient type
75-----Private residential clubs
76-----Rooming and boarding houses
Those that meet the special place
76-----Tourist homes definition.

A private residential club, rooming or boarding house, or tourist home is to be classified as a special place only if it contains five or more rooms or groups of rooms to be rented out. If there are fewer than five rooms or groups of rooms for rent, combine these rooms or groups of rooms with the landlord's quarters (or with each other if the landlord does not live in the structure).

77-----Combination tourist-trailer court, transient-type
78-----Combination tourist-trailer court, nontransient type
79-----Groups of five or more vacation cabins under single management,
transient-type

Facilities for Housing Students

81-----School dormitory
81-----Fraternity
81-----Sorority

APPENDIX A

CODES FOR TYPES OF SPECIAL PLACES (continued)

CODES TYPES

II. OTHER SPECIAL PLACES

Facilities for Housing Students---continued

- 82-----School with resident students (other than for the needy or infirm and other than resident schools with separate codes 83 and 84----see below).*
- 83-----Schools with resident students and with predominantly non-salaried faculty such as nuns or priests.*
- 84-----Schools with resident students and operated primarily for religious training (other than those with predominantly non-salaried faculty) such as Bible Institutes.*

Facilities for Housing Workers

- 85-----Dormitory for workers (other than specified for codes 86, 87 and 88).
- 86-----Bunkhouse (provided that it has or is expected to have quarters for five or more farm or ranch hands).
- 87-----Labor camp
- 87-----Logging camp
- 88-----Migratory workers' camp (those that meet the special place definition).

Additional Other Places

- 91-----Convents and other sisters' residences (those that meet the special place definition).
- 91-----Monasteries, other brothers' residences, and rectories (those that meet the special place definition).
- 92-----Communes
- 93-----Halfway houses.
- 94-----Independent Group Residences for the elderly, handicapped and functionally disabled (Christian Retirement Home).

- 00-----Nurses' Homes
- 01-----Flophouses, railroad stations
- 01-----Missions, Salvation Army Shelters
- 02-----Recreational, religious and educational camps (adults or family)
- 03-----Recreational, religious and educational camps (children's)
- 04-----Trailer camps
- 05-----Tent camps
- 06-----Armed forces installations
- 07-----Armed forces hospitals

*For a school with resident faculty only, assign code 82, 83, or 84 as appropriate.

NOTES :

INDUSTRY RECODES OUTLINE

APPENDIX B
Revised in 1992

Recodes			
No. 1 Chrs. 80-81	No. 2 Chrs. 82-83	Detail Code (Chrs. 77-79)	Industry Title
SIC Code*			
01	01	010-012,020,030	AGRICULTURE
			01-02,071-072,074- 076,078
02	01	031-032	FORESTRY AND FISHERIES
			08-09
10	02	040-042,050	MINING
			10,12-14
20	03	060	CONSTRUCTION
			15-17
(30-34, 40-46) (04)	-		MANUFACTURING:
			<u>NONDURABLE GOODS</u>
30	04	100-102,110-112, 120-122	Food and kindred products
			201-209
31	04	132,140-142, 150-152	Textile mill and finished textile products
			221-229,231-239
32	04	171-172	Printing, publishing and allied industries
			271-279
33	04	180-182,190-192	Chemicals and allied products
			281-287,289
34	04	130,160-162, 200-201,210-212, 220-222	Other nondurable goods
			21,261-263,265,267, 291,295,299,301-306, 308,311,313-317,319

*Standard Industrial Classification

APPENDIX B

INDUSTRY RECODES OUTLINE

Recodes			
No. 1 Chrs. 80-81	No. 2 Chrs. 82-83	Detail Code (Chrs. 77-79)	Industry Title
			SIC Code*
(30-34, <u>40-46</u>) <u>(04)</u>		-	MANUFACTURING: - continued
<u>(40-46)</u>			DURABLE GOODS
40	04	230-232,241-242	Furniture, lumber and wood 241-245,249,25
41	04	270-272,280	Primary metal industries 331-332,334,3331, 3334,3339,3351,3353- 3357,3363-3366,3369, 339
42	04	281-282,290-292, 300	Fabricated metal industries, including ordnance 341-349
43	04	310-312,320-322, 331-332	Machinery, except electrical 351-359
44	04	340-342,350	Electrical machinery, equipment and supplies 361-367,369
45	04	351-352,360-362, 370	Transportation equipment 371-376,379
46	04	250-252,261-262, 301,371-372, 380-381,390-392	Other and not specified durable goods 321-329,381-382,384- 387,39
<u>(50-54)</u> <u>(05)</u>		-	TRANSPORTATION, COMMUNICATIONS AND OTHER PUBLIC UTILITIES
50	05	400	Railroads 40
51	05	410-411	Trucking service and warehousing 421-423
52	05	401-402,412, 420-422,432	Other transportation 41,43-47
53	05	440-442	Communications 481-484,489
54	05	450-452,470-472	Utilities and sanitary 491-497

*Standard Industrial Classification

APPENDIX B

INDUSTRY RECODES OUTLINE

Recodes			
No. 1	No. 2	Chrs.	Detail Code
80-81	82-83	(Chrs. 77-79)	Industry Title
60	06	500-502,510-512, 521,530-532, 540-542,550-552, 560-562,571	WHOLESALE TRADE
			501-509,511-519
<u>(61-65)</u> <u>(07)</u>		-	RETAIL TRADE
61	07	591-592,600	General merchandise stores
62	07	601-602,610-611	Food, bakery and dairy stores
63	07	612,620-622	Automotive dealers and gasoline stations
64	07	641	Eating and drinking places
65	07	580-582,590,623, 630-633,640,642, 650-652,660-663, 670-672,681-682, 691	Other and not specified retail trade
			521,523,525-527,56, 571-572,5731,5734- 5736,591-594,5961- 5963,598,5992-5995, 5999
<u>(70-71)</u> <u>(08)</u>		-	FINANCE, INSURANCE, AND REAL ESTATE
70	08	700-702	Banking and credit agencies
71	08	710-712	Insurance, real estate, and other finance
62-65,67			

*Standard Industrial Classification

APPENDIX B

INDUSTRY RECODES OUTLINE

Recodes

No. 1 No. 2
Chrs. Chrs. Detail Code
80-81 82-83 (Chrs. 77-79)

(75-85)	(09-12)	-	SERVICES:	
(75-76)	(09)		<u>BUSINESS AND REPAIR SERVICES</u>	
75	09	721-722,731-732, 740-742,750	Business services	731-738,751,752, 7542
76	09	751-752,760	Repair services	753,7549,762-764, 7692,7694,7699
(77-78)	(10)	-	<u>PERSONAL SERVICES</u>	
77	10	761	Private households	88
78	10	762,770-772, 780-782,790-791	Other personal services	701-704,721-726,729
79	11	800-802,810	<u>ENTERTAINMENT AND RECREATION SERVICES</u>	781-784,791-794,799
(80-85)	(12)	-	<u>PROFESSIONAL AND RELATED SERVICES</u>	
80	12	831	Hospitals	806
81	12	812,820-822,830, 832,840	Health services, except hospitals	801-803,8041-8043, 8049,805,807-809
82	12	842,850	Elementary and secondary schools and colleges	821-822
83	12	851-852,860	Other educational services	823-824,829
84	12	861-863,870-873, 880-881	Social services, religious and membership organizations	832-833,835-836, 839,84,861-866,869
85	12	841,882,890-893	Legal, engineering and other professional services	81,871-874,899

*Standard Industrial Classification

APPENDIX B

INDUSTRY RECODES OUTLINE

Recodes			
No. 1 Chrs. 80-81	No. 2 Chrs. 82-83	Detail Code (Chrs. 77-79)	Industry Title
SIC Code*			
90	13	900-901,910, 921-922,930-932	PUBLIC ADMINISTRATION
95	14	998 and all other codes except 997	UNKNOWN INDUSTRY (Includes never worked)
96	14	997	REFUSED, CLASSIFIED, ETC.
97	15	Not applicable	NOT IN LABOR FORCE - codes Blank and 8 in current activity recode (loc. 75) (Under 18 or 18+ and not in Labor Force).
98	16	991	ARMED FORCES (excludes Reserves and National Guard)

*Standard Industrial Classification

APPENDIX B
INDUSTRY RECODE TITLES

Code	Titles	Recode No. 1 Inclusions
01	AGRICULTURE, FORESTRY AND FISHERIES	01, 02
02	MINING	10
03	CONSTRUCTION	20
04	MANUFACTURING	30-34, 40-46
05	TRANSPORTATION, COMMUNICATIONS AND OTHER PUBLIC UTILITIES	50-54
06	WHOLESALE TRADE	60
07	RETAIL TRADE	61-65
08	FINANCE, INSURANCE, AND REAL ESTATE	70-71
09	BUSINESS AND REPAIR SERVICES	75-76
10	PERSONAL SERVICES	77-78
11	ENTERTAINMENT AND RECREATION SERVICES	79
12	PROFESSIONAL AND RELATED SERVICES	80-85
13	PUBLIC ADMINISTRATION	90
14	UNKNOWN (includes never worked, refused, classified, etc.)	95-96
15	NOT IN LABOR FORCE	97
16	ARMED FORCES	98

APPENDIX C
OCCUPATION RECODE OUTLINE
Revised in 1992

Recodes

No. 1 Chrs. 87-88	No. 2 Chrs. 89-90	Detail Code (Chrs. 84-86)	Occupation Title	SOC Code*
(01-03) (01) - EXECUTIVE, ADMINISTRATIVE, AND MANAGERIAL OCCUPATIONS				
01	01	003-006	Officials and administrators, public administration	111-113
02	01	007-009, 013-019, 021-022	Managers and administrators, except public administration	121-128, 131-1344, 1351-1354, 1359, 136-139
03	01	023-029, 033-037	Management related occupations	1412, 1414-1415, 1419, 142-143, 1442-1443, 1449, 145, 1472-1473, 149
(04-11) (02) - PROFESSIONAL SPECIALTY OCCUPATIONS				
04	02	044-049, 053-059	Engineers	1622-1628, 1632- 1637, 1639
05	02	043, 063	Architects and surveyors	161, 164
06	02	064-069, 073-079, 083	Natural mathematical and computer scientists	171-172, 1732- 1733, 1739, 1842- 1843, 1845-1847, 1849, 1852-1855
07	02	084-089	Health diagnosing occupations	261-262, 27, 281, 283, 289
08	02	095-099, 103-106	Health assessment and treating occupations	29, 301-302, 3031- 3034, 3039, 304
09	02	113-119, 123-129, 133-139, 143-149, 153-159, 163-165	Teachers, librarians and counselors	2212-2218, 2222- 2228, 2231-2238, 2242-2247, 2249, 231-233, 235, 236, 239, 24, 251, 252
10	02	183-189, 193-195, 197-199	Writers, artists, entertainers and athletes	34, 321-329, 331- 333, 398
11	02	166-169, 173-179	Other professional specialty occupations	1912-1916, 1919, 192, 2032-2033, 2042, 2049, 211-212

*Standard Occupational Classification.

APPENDIX C
OCCUPATION RECODE OUTLINE

Recodes			
No. 1 Chrs. 87-88	No. 2 Chrs. 89-90	Detail Code (Chrs. 84-86)	Occupation Title
(12-13)	(03)	-	TECHNICIANS AND RELATED SUPPORT OCCUPATIONS
12	03	203-208	Health technologists and technicians
13	03	213-218, 223-229, 233-235	Technologists, technicians except health
			3711-3713, 3719, 372-373, 382, 3831- 3833, 384, 389, 392- 393, 396, 3971- 3972, 3974, 399, 825
(14-16)	(04)	-	SALES OCCUPATIONS
14	04	243	Supervisors and proprietors
15	04	253-259	Sales representatives, commodities and finance
16	04	263-269, 274-278, 283-285	Other sales
			4342-4348, 4351- 4354, 4356, 4359, 4362-4367, 4369, 444-447, 449
(17-21)	(05)	-	ADMINISTRATIVE SUPPORT OCCUPATIONS, INCLUDING CLERICAL
17	05	308-309	Computer equipment operators
18	05	313-315	Secretaries, stenographers and typists
19	05	337-339, 343-344	Financial records processing occupations
20	05	354-357	Mail and message distributing
21	05	303-307, 316-319, 323, 325-329, 335-336, 345-348, 353, 359, 363-366, 368, 373-379, 383- 387, 389	Other administrative support
			4511-4514, 4516, 4519, 4521-4529, 463, 4642- 4645, 4649, 4662-4664, 4692, 4694, 4696, 4699, 4722-4723, 4729, 4732- 4733, 4739, 4751-4759, 4782-4784, 4786-4787, 4791-4795, 4799

*Standard Occupational Classification.

APPENDIX C
OCCUPATION RECODE OUTLINE

Recodes

No. 1 Chrs. 87-88	No. 2 Chrs. 89-90	Detail Code (Chrs. 84-86)	Occupation Title	SOC Code*
22	06	403-407	PRIVATE HOUSEHOLD OCCUPATIONS	502-507,509
(23-24)	(07)	-	PROTECTIVE SERVICE OCCUPATIONS	
23	07	413-414,416-418, 423-424	Police and firefighters	5111-5112,5122- 5123,5132-5134
24	07	415,425-427	Other protective service occupations	5113,5142,5144, 5149
(25-28)	(08)	-	SERVICE OCCUPATIONS, EXCEPT PROTECTIVE AND HOUSEHOLD	
25	08	433-436,438-439, 443-444	Food service	5211-5219
26	08	445-447	Health service	5232-5233,5236
27	08	448-449,453-455	Cleaning and building service	5241-5242,5244- 5246,5249
28	08	456-459,461-469	Personal service	5251-5258,5262- 5264,5269
(29-31)	(09)	-	FARMING, FORESTRY AND FISHING OCCUPATIONS	
29	09	473-476	Farm operators and managers	5512-5515,5522- 5525
30	09	477,479,483-489	Farm workers and other agricultural workers	5611-5619,5621- 5622,5624-5625, 5627
31	09	494-499	Forestry and fishing occupations	571-573,579, 583-584,8241(pt.)

*Standard Occupational Classification.

APPENDIX C
OCCUPATION RECODE OUTLINE

Recodes			
No. 1 Chrs.	No. 2 Chrs.	Detail Code (Chrs. 84-86)	Occupation Title
(32-34)	(10)	-	PRECISION PRODUCTION, CRAFT AND REPAIR OCCUPATIONS
32	10	503,505-509, 514-519,523, 525-527,529, 533-536,538-539, 543-544,547,549	Mechanics and repairers
33	10	553-558,563-567, 569,573,575-577, 579,583-585, 587-589,593-599, 613-617	Construction and extractive trades
34	10	628,634-637,639, 643-647,649, 653-659,666-669, 674-679,683-684, 686-689,693-696, 699	Precision production occupations

*Standard Occupational Classification

APPENDIX C
OCCUPATION RECODE OUTLINE

Recodes

No. 1 No. 2
Chrs. Chrs. Detail Code
87-88 89-90 (Chrs. 84-86)

Occupation Title

SOC Code*

OPERATORS, FABRICATORS AND LABORERS

(35-36) (11)

**MACHINE OPERATORS, ASSEMBLERS
AND INSPECTORS**

35	11	703-709, 713-715, 717, 719, 723-729, 733-739, 743-745, 747-749, 753-759, 763-766, 768-769, 773-774, 777, 779	Machine operators and tenderers, except precision	6841-6842, 6849, 6855, 6863, 6868, 7312-7319, 7322, 7324, 7326, 7329, 7339, 7342-7344, 7349, 7431-7435, 7439, 7443-7444, 7449, 7451-7452, 7459, 7462-7463, 7467, 7472, 7474, 7476-7478, 7479, 7512-7519, 7522, 7529, 7539, 7542- 7544, 7549, 7631- 7636, 7639, 7642- 7644, 7649, 7651- 7652, 7654-7659, 7661-7667, 7669, 7671-7676, 7677(pt.), 7678-7679
36	11	783-787, 789, 793, 795-799	Fabricators, assemblers, inspectors and samplers	7332-7333, 7532- 7533, 7714, 7717, 772, 774, 7753- 7759, 782-785, 787

(37-39) (12)

**TRANSPORTATION AND MATERIAL
MOVING OCCUPATIONS**

37	12	803-804, 806, 808- 809, 813-814	Motor vehicle operators	8111, 8212-8216, 8218-8219, 874
38	12	823-826, 828-829, 833-834	Other transportation, except motor vehicles	8113, 8232-8233, 8239, 8241(pt.), 8242-8245
39	12	843-845, 848-849, 853, 855-856, 859	Material moving equipment operators	812, 8312-8319

*Standard Occupational Classification

APPENDIX C
OCCUPATION RECODE OUTLINE

Recodes

No. 1 Chrs. 87-88	No. 2 Chrs. 89-90	Detail Code (Chrs. 84-86)	Occupation Title	SOC Code*
(40-41) (13)		HANDLERS, EQUIPMENT CLEANERS, HELPERS AND LABORERS		
40	13	869	Construction laborers	871
41	13	864-868, 874-878, 883, 885, 887-889	Freight, stock and material handlers	85, 861-863, 8641-8646, 8648, 865, 8722-8726, 873, 875, 8761, 8769
95	14	998 and all other codes except 997	UNKNOWN OCCUPATION (Includes never worked)	
96	14	997	REFUSED, CLASSIFIED, ETC.	
97	15	Not applicable	NOT IN LABOR FORCE - codes Blank and 8 in current activity recode (Loc. 75). (Under 18 or 18+ and Not in Labor Force)	
98	16	905	MILITARY	

*Standard Occupational Classification

APPENDIX C
OCCUPATION RECODE TITLES

Code	Titles	Recode No. 1 Inclusions
MANAGERIAL AND PROFESSIONAL SPECIALTY OCCUPATIONS		
01	EXECUTIVE, ADMINISTRATIVE AND MANAGERIAL OCCUPATIONS	01-03
02	PROFESSIONAL SPECIALTY OCCUPATIONS	04-11
TECHNICAL, SALES AND ADMINISTRATIVE SUPPORT OCCUPATIONS		
03	TECHNICIANS AND RELATED SUPPORT OCCUPATIONS	12-13
04	SALES OCCUPATIONS	14-16
05	ADMINISTRATIVE SUPPORT OCCUPATIONS, INCLUDING CLERICAL	17-21
SERVICE OCCUPATIONS		
06	PRIVATE HOUSEHOLD OCCUPATIONS	22
07	PROTECTIVE SERVICE OCCUPATIONS	23-24
08	SERVICE OCCUPATIONS, EXCEPT PROTECTIVE AND HOUSEHOLD	25-28
09	<u>FARMING, FORESTRY AND FISHING OCCUPATIONS</u>	29-31
10	<u>PRECISION PRODUCTION, CRAFT AND REPAIR OCCUPATIONS</u>	32-34
OPERATORS, FABRICATORS AND LABORERS		
11	MACHINE OPERATORS, ASSEMBLERS AND INSPECTORS	35-36
12	TRANSPORTATION AND MATERIAL MOVING OCCUPATIONS	37-39
13	HANDLERS, EQUIPMENT CLEANERS, HELPERS AND LABORERS	40-41
14	<u>UNKNOWN OCCUPATION (includes never worked, refused, classified, etc.)</u>	95-96
15	<u>NOT IN LABOR FORCE</u>	97
16	<u>MILITARY</u>	98

NOTES:

APPENDIX D

DESCRIPTION OF CLASS OF ACCIDENT CODE

The three-digit Class of Accident Code described in detail below classifies accidents as follows. Priority is given to Codes 400, 500, 600 in that order.

Total Motor Vehicle Accidents = Codes 1 and 2 in first digit of recode

Moving Motor Vehicle

Accidents = Code 1 in first digit of recode

Nonmoving Motor Vehicle

Accidents = Code 2 in first digit of recode

Total Work Accidents = Code 1 in second digit of recode

Total Home Accidents = Code 1 in third digit of recode

Class of Accident Recode Loc. 135-137	Description	SOURCE - TAPE LOCATIONS			
		132 MV	134 MMV	130 Where?	131 Work?
111	Moving motor vehicle - at work - at home	1	1	1,2	1
112	Moving motor vehicle - at work- not at home- street or highway	1	1	3	1
113	Moving motor vehicle - at work - not at home - not on street or highway	1	1	Not 1-3	1
121	Moving motor vehicle - not at work - at home - not on street or highway	1	1	1,2	Not 1,4
122	Moving motor vehicle - not at work - not at home - on street or highway	1	1	3	Not 1
123	Moving motor vehicle - not at work - not at home not on street or highway	1	1	Not 1-3	Not 1-4

APPENDIX D

DESCRIPTION OF CLASS OF ACCIDENT CODE

Class of Accident Recode Loc. 135-137	Description	SOURCE - TAPE LOCATIONS			
		132 MV	134 MMV	130 Where?	131 Work?
211	Nonmoving motor vehicle - at work - at home	1	Not 1	1,2	1
212	Nonmoving motor vehicle - at work - not at home	1	Not 1	Not 1,2	1
221	Nonmoving motor vehicle - not at work - at home	1	Not 1	1,2	Not 1,4
222	Nonmoving motor vehicle - not at work - not at home	1	Not 1	Not 1,2	Not 1,4
311	Non-motor vehicle - at work - at home	Not 1	-	1,2	1
312	Non-motor vehicle - at work - not at home	Not 1	-	Not 1,2	1
321	Non-motor vehicle not at work - at home	Not 1	-	1,2	Not 1,4
322	Non-motor vehicle - not at work - not at home	Not 1	-	Not 1,2	Not 1,4
400	Injured in Armed Forces	-	-	-	4
500	Therapeutic misadventure	-	-	-	Not 4
600	Injury Condition/Adverse Reaction	-	-	-	Not 4

APPENDIX E

**CLASSIFICATION OF OPERATIONS AND
NON-OPERATIVE PROCEDURES, FOR HIS**

OPERATION, TYPE UNKNOWN, SITE UNKNOWN

00 Operation, no site or type

Includes: operation NEC on gland NOS, or "side," or other very ill-defined site. Use 00 when it is known that an operation was performed, but there is no information about the kind of operation or about the body system or part involved.

OPERATIONS ON THE NERVOUS SYSTEM (01-05)

- 01 Incision and excision of skull, brain, and cerebral meninges
- 02 Other operations on skull, brain, and cerebral meninges
- 03 Operations on spinal cord and spinal canal structures
- 04 Operations on cranial and peripheral nerves
- 05 Operations on sympathetic nerves or ganglia

OPERATIONS ON THE ENDOCRINE SYSTEM (06-07)

- 06 Operations on thyroid and parathyroid glands
- 07 Operations on other endocrine glands

OPERATIONS ON THE EYE (08-16)

- 08 Operations on eyelids
- 09 Operations on lacrimal system (tear ducts)
- 10 Operations on conjunctiva
- 11 Operations on cornea
- 12 Operations on iris, ciliary body, sclera, and anterior chamber
- 13 Operations on lens
- 14 Operations on retina, choroid, vitreous, and posterior chamber
- 15 Operations on extraocular muscles
- 16 Operations on orbit and eyeball

APPENDIX E

CLASSIFICATION OF OPERATIONS AND
NON-OPERATIVE PROCEDURES, FOR HIS

OPERATIONS ON THE EAR (18-20)

- 18 Operations on external ear
- 19 Reconstructive operations on middle ear
- 20 Other operations on middle and inner ear

OPERATIONS ON THE NOSE, MOUTH AND PHARYNX (21-29)

- 21 Operations on the nose

Includes: operations on bone and skin of nose
- 22 Operations on nasal sinuses
- 23 Removal and restoration of teeth
- 24 Other operations on teeth, gums and alveoli
- 25 Operations on tongue
- 26 Operations on salivary glands and ducts
- 27 Other operations on mouth and face

Includes: operations on lips, palate and soft tissue of face and mouth,
except tongue and gingiva.

- 28 Operations on tonsils and adenoids
- 29 Operations on pharynx

OPERATIONS ON THE RESPIRATORY SYSTEM (30-34)

- 30 Excision of larynx
- 31 Other operations on larynx and trachea
- 32 Excision of lung and bronchus
- 33 Other operations on lung and bronchus
- 34 Operations on chest wall, pleura, mediastinum and diaphragm

APPENDIX E

CLASSIFICATION OF OPERATIONS AND
NON-OPERATIVE PROCEDURES, FOR HIS

OPERATIONS ON THE CARDIOVASCULAR SYSTEM (35-39)

- 35 Operations on valves and septa of heart
- 36 Operations on vessels of heart
- 37 Other operations on heart and pericardium
- 38 Incision, excision and occlusion of vessels
- 39 Other operations on vessels

OPERATIONS ON THE HEMIC AND LYMPHATIC SYSTEM (40-41)

- 40 Operations on lymphatic system
- 41 Operations on bone marrow and spleen

OPERATIONS ON THE DIGESTIVE SYSTEM (42-54)

- 42 Operations on the esophagus
- 43 Incision and excision of stomach
- 44 Other operations on stomach
- 45 Incision, excision, and anastomosis of intestine
- 46 Other operations on intestine
- 47 Operations on appendix
- 48 Operations on rectum and perirectal tissue
- 49 Operations on anus
- 50 Operations on liver
- 51 Operations on gallbladder and biliary tract

Includes: operations on common bile duct, cystic duct and hepatic duct

- 52 Operations on pancreas
- 53 Repair of hernia
- 54 Other operations on abdominal region

Includes: operations on epigastric region, flank, groin region, inguinal region, loin region, male pelvic cavity, mesentery, omentum, peritoneum and retroperitoneal tissue space

CLASSIFICATION OF OPERATIONS AND
NON-OPERATIVE PROCEDURES, FOR HIS

OPERATIONS ON THE URINARY SYSTEM (55-59)

- 55 Operations on kidney
 - Includes: operations on renal pelvis
- 56 Operations on ureter
- 57 Operations on urinary bladder
- 58 Operations on urethra
- 59 Other operations on urinary tract

OPERATIONS ON MALE GENITAL ORGANS (60-64)

- 60 Operations on prostate and seminal vesicles
- 61 Operations on scrotum and tunica vaginalis
- 62 Operations on testes
- 63 Operations on spermatic cord, epididymis, and vas deferens
- 64 Operations on penis

OPERATIONS ON THE FEMALE GENITAL ORGANS (65-71)

- 65 Operations on ovary
- 66 Operations on fallopian tubes
- 67 Operations on cervix
- 68 Other incision and excision of uterus
- 69 Other operations on uterus and supporting structures
- 70 Operations on vagina and cul-de-sac
- 71 Operations on vulva and perineum

APPENDIX E

CLASSIFICATION OF OPERATIONS AND
NON-OPERATIVE PROCEDURES, FOR HIS

OBSTETRICAL PROCEDURES (72-75)

- 72 Forceps, vacuum, and breech delivery
73 Other procedures inducing or assisting delivery

Includes: spontaneous delivery with manual assistance

- 74 Caesarean section and removal of fetus
75 Other obstetric operations

For HIS, includes also "normal delivery"

OPERATIONS ON THE MUSCULOSKELETAL SYSTEM (76-84)

- 76 Operations on facial bones and joints

Excludes: accessory sinuses (22); nasal bones (21); and skull (01-02)

- 77 Incision, excision and division of other bones

Excludes: operations on facial bones (76); joint structures (80-81); nasal bones (21); and skull (01-02)

- 78 Other operations on bones, except facial bones

Excludes: operations on joint structures (80-81); nasal bones (21); and skull (01-02)

- 79 Reduction of fracture and dislocation

Includes: application of cast or splint; reduction with insertion of traction device

Excludes: external fixation alone for immobilization of fracture (93); internal fixation without reduction of fracture (78); operations on facial bones (76); nasal bones (21); orbit (76); skull (02); vertebrae (03); removal of cast or splint (97); replacement of cast or splint (97); and traction alone for reduction of fracture (93)

- 80 Incision and excision of joint structures

Includes: operations on capsule of joint; cartilage; condyle; ligament; meniscus; and synovial membrane

Excludes: cartilage of ear (18); nose (21); and joints of face (76)

APPENDIX E

CLASSIFICATION OF OPERATIONS AND
NON-OPERATIVE PROCEDURES, FOR HIS

OPERATIONS ON THE MUSCULOSKELETAL SYSTEM (76-84) - continued

81 Repair and plastic operations on joint structures

Includes: operations on ankle; knee; shoulder; elbow; wrist; hip; vertebrae; fingers; and toes not codable elsewhere and when condition is not specified and tissue (such as skin, bone, etc.) is not apparent.

82 Operations on muscle, tendon and fascia of hand

Includes: operations on synovial membrane and tendon sheath

83 Operations on muscle, tendon, fascia and bursa, except hand

Includes: operations on synovial membrane and tendon sheaths.

Excludes: hand (82); diaphragm (34); and muscles of eye (15).

84 Other procedures on musculoskeletal system.

OPERATIONS ON THE INTEGUMENTARY SYSTEM (85-86)

85 Operations on the breast

Includes: operations on skin of breast and previous mastectomy site (female or male).

86 Operations on skin and subcutaneous tissue

Includes: operations on hair follicles; male perineum; nails; sebaceous glands subcutaneous fat pads; and superficial fossae.

Includes also: operations on regions such as arm; armpit; back; cheek; buttock; chin; feet; forearm; forehead; hand; head; heel; leg; neck; scalp; temple; temporal region; and thigh when specific tissue (such as bone; cartilage; joint; etc.) involved is not mentioned.

Excludes: those on skin of anus (49); breast (85); ear (18); eyebrow (08); eyelid (08); female perineum (71); lips (27); nose (21); penis (64); scrotum (61); and vulva (71).

Excludes also: operations on the head when a specific part (such as brain) is mentioned

APPENDIX E

CLASSIFICATION OF OPERATIONS AND
NON-OPERATIVE PROCEDURES, FOR HIS

MISCELLANEOUS DIAGNOSTIC AND THERAPEUTIC PROCEDURES (87-99)

87 Diagnostic radiology

Includes: diagnostic X-rays of face, head, neck, brain, skull, spine, chest, digestive tract, urinary system, genital organs, abdomen and breast.
Excludes: angiography (88).

88 Other diagnostic radiology and related techniques

Includes: CAT scan of abdomen; skeletal X-rays of extremities; arteriograms using contrast material; and X-rays of veins.
Excludes: angiogram of eye (95).

89 Interview, evaluation, consultation, and examination

Includes: diagnostic interviews; neurological exams; gynecological exams; dental exams; digital exams of rectum; pacemaker checks; electrocardiograms and general physical exams.

90 Microscopic examination-I

Includes: microscopic examination of specimen from nervous system, spinal fluid, endocrine glands, eye, ear, nose, throat, larynx, trachea, bronchus, pleura, lung, of sputum, and blood.

91 Microscopic examination - II

Includes: microscopic examination of specimen from liver, bile ducts or passage, pancreas, peritoneal, retroperitoneal, kidney, ureter, perirenal, periureteral tissue, bladder, urethra, prostate, seminal vesicle, urine, semen, and female genital tract.

92 Nuclear medicine

Includes: scans radiation therapy (cobalt) (iodine).

93 Physical therapy, respiratory therapy, rehabilitation, and related procedures

Includes: diagnostic physical therapy; physical therapy exercises such as breathing exercises; manual traction; training in use of prosthesis; whirlpool treatments; heat therapy; skeletal traction; speech and reading training for blind; play therapy; education therapy; artificial respiration, mouth to mouth resuscitation; oxygen and helium therapy.

APPENDIX E

CLASSIFICATION OF OPERATIONS AND
NON-OPERATIVE PROCEDURES, FOR HIS

MISCELLANEOUS DIAGNOSTIC AND THERAPEUTIC PROCEDURES (87-99) - continued

94 Psychiatric interviews, consultations and evaluations

Includes: routine psychiatric visits; psychoanalysis; psychiatric electroshock therapy and other non-operative procedures relating to the psyche.

95 Ophthalmologic and otologic diagnosis and treatment

Includes: eye exams; functional tests of eye; fitting glasses, contact lens; hearing tests; and fitting hearing aids.

96 Nonoperative intubation and irrigation

Includes: insertion of airway tubes; ear packing; vaginal packing; insertion of vaginal diaphragm; rectal packing; dilation of rectum and anus; manual reduction of hernia; gastric lavage; irrigation of ostomies; cleaning of eye, ear and nose; lavage of bronchus and trachea

97 Replacement and removal of therapeutic appliances

Includes: replacement of ostomy tubes; replacement of casts; removal of nasal packing, removal of dental wiring; removal of sutures from head and neck; removal of drainage tubes; removal of IUD and removal of sutures from genital tract.

98 Nonoperative removal of foreign body

Includes: removal of foreign body from digestive system, ear, nose, larynx, vagina, etc. WITHOUT INCISION.

99 Other nonoperative procedures

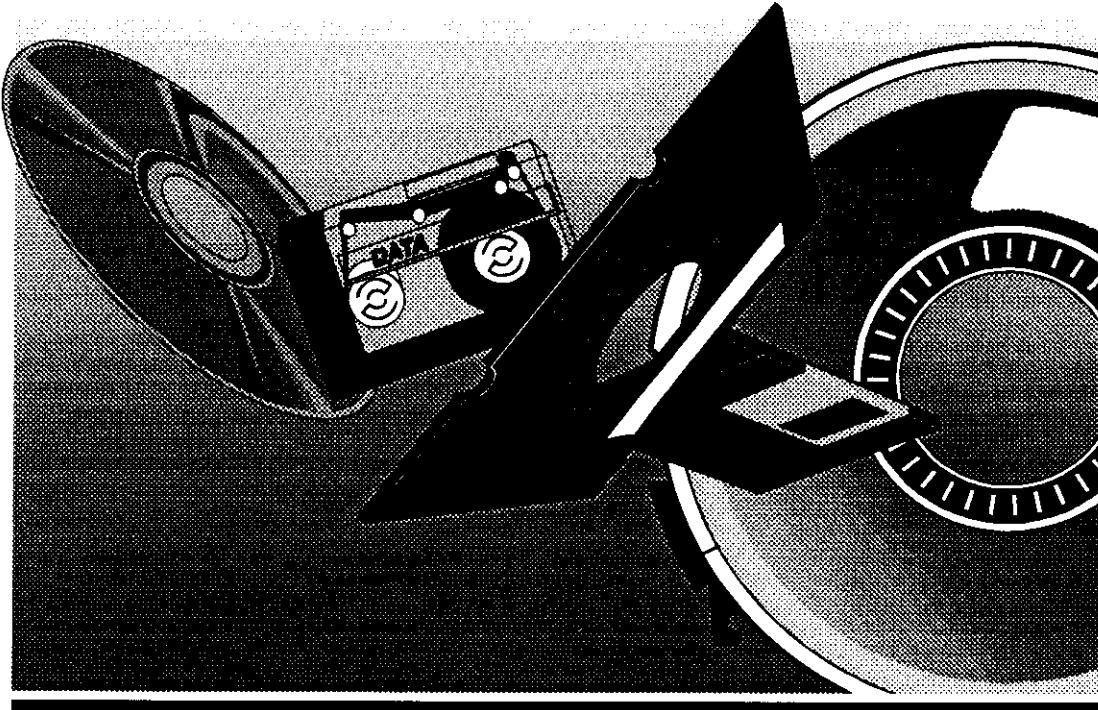
Includes: blood transfusions, exchange transfusions, injections or infusions of therapeutic or prophylactic substances; cardiac pacemaker (battery and sensing types), acupuncture and fitting of dentures.

Public Use

Data File

Documentation

Part III - Medical Coding Manual and Short Index
National Health Interview Survey, 1994



U.S. DEPARTMENT OF HEALTH AND HUMAN SERVICES
Public Health Service
Centers for Disease Control and Prevention
National Center for Health Statistics

Hyattsville, Maryland
December 1995

TABLE OF CONTENTS

Page

SECTION I. INTRODUCTION AND ORIENTATION GUIDES

A. Brief Description of the Health Interview Survey	1
B. Importance of the Medical Coding	1
C. Codes Used (described briefly)	2
D. Appendix III	2
E. The Short Index	2
F. Abbreviations and References	3
G. Training Preliminary to Coding	4

SECTION II. CLASSES OF CHRONIC AND ACUTE CONDITIONS

A. General Rules	6
B. When to Assign "1" (Chronic)	6
C. Selected Conditions Coded "1" Regardless of Onset	7
D. When to Assign "2" (Acute)	8
E. Assigning the Diagnostic Code for Acute, Chronic or Unspecified	9

SECTION III. GENERAL CODING PRINCIPLES AND PROBLEMS

A. The Objective	10
B. Expressions Indicating Doubt	10
C. Dagger-Asterisk System	11
D. Overcoding, Undercoding	12
E. Arrested, Inactive, Corrected Chronic Conditions	13
F. "Active" Cause and Later Condition Pages	13
G. Symptoms and Troubles, General	14
H. Nervous or Mental Trouble	17
I. "Removal and Other Operations" on Condition Page	18
J. Allergies	21
K. Disc Conditions	21
L. Growths	22
M. Pregnancy with Hypertension and Other Toxemias	23
N. Spelling Problems	23
O. Typhoid and Other Carrier States	23
P. When to Use 799.8, 799.9	23
Q. Terms Not in Short Index or Vols. 1 or 2	23

SECTION IV. "COMBINING" AND "MERGING"

A. "Combining"	24
1. General	24
2. Specific Rules	24
B. "Merging"	26

SECTION V. IMPAIRMENTS AND THEIR CAUSES

A. General	27
B. Procedure for Assigning X-codes for Impaired Extremities	28
C. Priority in Assigning X-codes for Different Types of Impairments	29
D. Multiple Impairments, Same Person	29
E. Etiology	31
F. Visual Impairments	32
G. Hearing Impairments	36
H. Speech Impairments	38
I. Special Sense Impairments	39
J. Special Learning Disability	40
K. Absence of Extremities, and Certain Other Parts	41
L. Paralysis, Complete and Partial	43
M. Deformity: Limb, Back, Trunk	45
N. Non-Paralytic Orthopedic Impairment	47
O. Impairment, NEC	49

SECTION VI. INJURIES, ACCIDENTS AND THEIR EFFECTS

A. Injury, General	50
B. Date of Onset	51
C. Multiple "Injuries" and Multiple Accidents	51

SECTION VII. CONDITIONS RELATED TO CHILDBEARING

A. Infants	52
B. Pregnancy	52
C. Abortion	52
D. Deliveries	53
E. Puerperal Complications	53
F. 1-Digit Supplementary Code	53

SECTION VIII. HOSPITALIZATION AND SURGERY

A. General	54
B. Codable Admissions	54
C. Coding Operations	54
D. Multiple Operations	54

APPENDIX I. X-CODE FOR SPECIAL IMPAIRMENTS

A. History and Development of the X-code	1
B. General Characteristics of Special Impairments	1
C. ICD Codes for Impairments	2
D. Late Effects of Diseases, Injuries and Poisonings	7
E. List of 1-Digit Etiology Codes	9
F. Classification of Impairments, by Type and Site	10
X00-X03 Impairment of Vision	10
X05-X09 Impairment of Hearing	10
X10-X19 Impairment of Speech, Intelligence, Special Sense	11
X20-X35 Absence, Loss, Extremities, and Certain Other Sites	12
X40-X64 Paralysis, Complete or Partial	13
X70-X79 Specified Deformity of Limbs, Trunk, Back	13
X80-X89 Non-Paralytic Orthopedic Impairment, (Chronic) NEC	16
X90-X99 Defect, Abnormality, Special Impairment, NEC	17

APPENDIX II. CLASSIFICATION OF OPERATIONS, AND NON OPERATIVE PROCEDURES, FOR HIS

General	1
Operations	
Operation, Type Unknown, Site Unknown (00)	2
Operations on the Nervous System (01-05)	2
Operations on the Endocrine System (06-07)	2
Operations on the Eye (08-16)	2
Operations on the Ear (18-20)	3
Operations on the Nose, Mouth, and Pharynx (21-29)	3
Operations on the Respiratory System (30-34)	3
Operations on the Cardiovascular System (35-39)	4
Operations on the Hemic and Lymphatic System (40-41)	4
Operations on the Digestive System (42-54)	4
Operations on the Urinary System (55-59)	5
Operations on the Male Genital Organs (60-64)	5
Operations on the Female Genital Organs (65-71)	5
Obstetrical Procedures (72-75)	5
Operations on the Musculoskeletal System (76-84)	6
Operations on the Integumentary System (85-86)	7
Miscellaneous Diagnostic and Therapeutic Procedures (87-99)	7

**APPENDIX III. MODIFICATIONS OF THE NINTH REVISION OF THE
INTERNATIONAL CLASSIFICATION OF DISEASES,
AND SPECIAL INSTRUCTIONS, USED FOR THE
HEALTH INTERVIEW SURVEY**

Explanatory Notes	2
Infective and Parasitic Diseases (001-136, 137-139)	4
Neoplasms (140-239)	5
Endocrine, Nutritional and Metabolic Diseases and Immunity Disorders (240-279)	6
Diseases of the Blood and Blood-Forming Organs (280-289)	7
Mental Disorders (290-319)	8
Diseases of the Nervous System and Sense Organs (320-389)	12
Disorders of the Peripheral Nervous System (350-359)	15
Disorders of the Eye and Adnexa (360-379)	16
Diseases of Ear and Mastoid Process (380-389)	17
Rheumatic Fever and Chronic Rheumatic Heart Disease (390-398)	19
Hypertensive Disease (401-405)	19
Ischemic Heart Disease (410-414)	20
Chronic Pulmonary Heart Disease (416)	20
Other Forms of Heart Disease (420-429)	20
Cerebrovascular Disease (430-438)	22
Diseases of Arteries, Arterioles, and Capillaries (440-448)	23
Diseases of Veins and Lymphatics, and Other Diseases of Circulatory System (451-459)	23
Diseases of the Respiratory System (460-519)	24
Diseases of the Digestive System (520-579)	28
Diseases of the Genitourinary System (580-629)	30
Deliveries and Complications of Pregnancy, Childbirth, and the Puerperium (630-676)	31
Diseases of the Skin and Subcutaneous Tissue (680-709)	32
Diseases of the Musculoskeletal System and Connective Tissue (710-739)	35
Congenital Anomalies (740-759)	39
Certain Conditions Originating in the Perinatal Period (760-779)	45
Symptoms and Ill-Defined Conditions (780-799)	46
Injury and Poisonings (800-999)	54

Short Index of Diseases, Impairments, and Injuries

Index of Operations and Non Operative Procedures, For HIS

A. The Health Interview Survey

Approximately 40,000 interviews are conducted over the course of a year, with households located in each of the 50 States, and the District of Columbia.

Data collected in the Health Interview Survey provide a statistical picture of illness and disability in the civilian, noninstitutional, population of the nation as well as information on related subjects such as time lost from work or school because of illness and medical care received by persons who are ill. One of our nation's greatest resources is a healthy population. The health of the nation may be evaluated in economic terms, such as the loss of individual income or the reduction of total national economic production because of illness or injury. It may be evaluated in terms other than economic, such as the extent of occurrence of particular kinds of illness. Since the overall health of the nation is of vital importance, it is necessary to be able to measure our health assets and liabilities in terms of the entire population.

The Congress of the United States, realizing the necessity for national health statistics, authorized a continuing National Health Survey (Public Law 652 of the 84th Congress) which was signed into law by the President in 1956. Since then several amendments have been made to the initial legislation. Currently the survey is authorized by the Public Health Service Act 95-623.

The Health Interview Survey, with other divisions of the National Center for Health Statistics, is a part of the Department of Health and Human Services. The NCHS contracts with the Bureau of the Census to conduct the interviewing because of the Bureau's function as an objective fact-finding agency and because of its broad experience in conducting surveys. The findings of the survey are analyzed and published by the National Center for Health Statistics.

B. Importance of the Medical Coding

Medical coding plays a very important part in the success of the Health Interview Survey. All of the information on the questionnaire about diseases, injuries, accidents, deliveries, and operations must be translated into numerical symbols. Mistakes in medical coding can seriously affect the accuracy of data which will be furnished to people who will base their decisions and plans on this material.

C. Codes Used

1. Diagnostic The diagnostic code for the condition causing the illness or disability is derived from the Ninth Revision, International Classification of Diseases (ICD-9), and a supplementary classification called the X-Code for Special Impairments. The X-Code is listed and described in detail in Appendix I of this Manual.
 2. Operations Operations are coded according to the 2-digit HIS modification, listed in Appendix II. This modification is consistent with the ICD-9 Clinical Modification.
- D. Appendix III Appendix III contains the modifications which have been made to ICD-9 for the purpose of coding HIS condition data. It lists in numerical order all diagnostic categories in 001-999 which have been changed, moved, deleted, or added by HIS.
- E. The Short Index The Short Index, developed by the Health Interview Survey, has been planned to simplify the job of locating the correct medical codes. It contains the names of the more common diseases, symptoms, and injuries of the International Classification, and all types of impairments and operations listed in Appendices I and II. It includes a number of popular or lay terms not indexed by International. Even more importantly, it contains most of the terms affected by the considerable number of modifications of the International shown in Appendix III of this Manual.

The Short Index **MUST** be consulted **FIRST IN ORDER** to assign a diagnostic code. If the term to be coded is not listed in the Short Index, the coder will then look for it in Volume 2. When the diagnostic code is found, in either the Short Index or Volume 2, the coder must then check Volume 1 for inclusions and exclusions. A final reference **must always be made to Appendix III** in order to determine if any modifications have been made by HIS to the category. If the term does not appear in the Short Index or Volume 2, then the coder should refer the case to the supervisor.

F. <u>Abbreviations and References</u>	To save space in the Manual hereafter, and in the Short Index, abbreviations are used freely.	
1. Organizations	HIS NCHS	Health Interview Survey National Center for Health Statistics
2. Certain Classifications and References To Them	ICD CM3 E-Code V-Code X-Code Vol. 1 Vol. 2 001-779	International Classification of Diseases ICD-9 Clinical Modification Volume 3 External Cause of Injury Classification of ICD. Supplementary Classifications of Factors Influencing Health Status and Contact with Health Services; not used for HIS X-Code for Special Impairments (X00-X99) Tabular list of ICD Alphabetical Index of ICD Used in various discussions to indicate the span of numbers of ICD from 001 through 779, constituting the main body of the classification for diseases.
	780-799	The span of numbers for certain symptoms, signs and ill-defined conditions.
	800-999	The span of numbers for injuries and adverse effects.
	X00-X99	The span of numbers for special impairments.
3. Certain Parts of the Questionnaire and Booklet	Col Cond. Page Hosp. Page	Column Contains facts about accidents, diagnoses, medical care, disability, dates first noticed, etc. Where hospital admissions are recorded.
4. Time of Onset of a Condition	Onset -3 mos 3 mos + -2 wks -12 mos 12 mos +	When a condition started Within past 3 months 3 months ago or longer Within past 2 weeks; "last week or the week before." Within past year. 1 year ago or longer.
5. Other Abbreviations in Manual and Short Index	NOS NEC App. ORTH IMP OP	Not otherwise specified, or so stated-in reference to a medical term. Not elsewhere classified in a particular listing or some other place in the various classifications-in reference to a medical term. Appendix Orthopedic impairment of the lesser kinds in X80-X89-not paralysis and not deformity; "See ORTH IMP," in the Short Index, is a referral to the listing under Orthopedic Impairment NEC. Operation: "See OP NEC" is a referral in the Short Index, to the listing under Operation, NEC.

- G. Training Preliminary To Coding Persons new to medical coding should be given an extensive preview of the main classes of diseases and injuries of ICD, in Vol. 1, and must be thoroughly prepared to recognize all departures from ICD as shown in Appendix III of this Manual. WHETHER THE CODER IS EXPERIENCED OR INEXPERIENCED, THE IMPORTANCE OF KNOWING WHAT IS IN APPENDIX III CANNOT BE OVEREMPHASIZED.
1. ICD 3-digit categories Review the listing on pp. 3-45, of Vol. 1. This will give some idea of the large number of conditions that are possible with their technical medical names, and how they are grouped as to type or the system of the body. The E-Codes and V-Codes of ICD are not used by HIS.
2. Comparing the Tabular List, Vol. 1, with Appendix III The Tabular List begins on p. 49 of Vol. 1. Read the explanatory notes for Appendix III. Next, compare each category listed in Appendix III with that category as listed in Vol. 1, Tabular List, beginning with 001 and continuing through to 999, noting statements beginning "For HIS;" these tell in what way the HIS method differs, or call attention to some provision that is especially important for HIS. This first reading is also intended to acquaint the new coder with more detailed kinds of diagnoses, both in the technical language of Vol. 1 and the more common kinds of terms discussed in Appendix III.
3. Vol. 2 Although most of the terms reported will be found in the Short Index, there will be need at times to consult Vol. 2. Read the Introduction to Vol. 2. Reference to the V-Code may be read but these codes are not used by HIS.

Attention is called to the special use of parentheses, page X, a form that appears also in the Short Index.

Note that conditions combining with other conditions, into one code, appear first in a listing under the word with. This form is also used in the Short Index.

The paragraphs following "Neoplasms," p.338, will be helpful, as the Short Index refers the coder to Vol. 2 for all sites and types of tumors. The HIS rules for coding neoplasms are in Appendix III (140-239).

In using Vol. 2 or the Short Index, watch for indented terms under the word multiple, for here will be listed codes that may be used when two or more sites (parts of the body) are affected by the same disease or injury, but a single code may be used; this should be looked for in all listings, but particularly under Fracture; Wound, open; and other types of Injury.

G. Training

Preliminary
To Coding
Continued

4. Dagger-Asterisks

Dagger, asterisks(†/*) are used to designate the "etiology" code and "manifestations" code respectively for terms subject to dual classifications. See under "code numbers" p. IX of Vol. 2 for further explanation. For HIS, only the dagger codes will be used.

5. Appendix II

For HIS, operations on the Hospital Page are coded according to a classification of operations listed in Appendix II and ICD-9 CM3. Study Appendix II to become acquainted with the terms used and the parts and structures included in the various systems of the body.

6. Appendix I

Appendix I (X-Code for Special Impairments) should be read and discussed during the orientation period.

A. General Rules

1. Each condition to be included in the survey statistics must be identified by the Medical Coder as either chronic or acute, according to HIS definitions and procedures set forth in this Section. The modifiers "acute" or "chronic," alone, which the respondent may happen to use will not affect any of the codes to be used.
2. All codable conditions will be given, in addition to the diagnostic code, a supplementary 1-digit code as follows:

1.....Chronic
2.....Acute

(In the following instructions "1" will stand for chronic, "2" for acute, in referring to this supplementary 1-digit code.)

3. For instructions for assigning the diagnostic code for acute or chronic--See Item E, below.

B. When to Assign "1"
(chronic)

A condition is assigned "1" when it meets one or more of the following specifications:

- (a) had its onset 3 mos +, except complications of a current pregnancy
- (b) qualifies for a diagnostic code for an impairment with "X" in the first digit or
- (c) is one of the selected conditions included in Item C below.

(For the coding of impairments, see Section V, and Appendix I of this Manual.)

C. Selected
Conditions
Coded "1",
Regardless
of Onset

Note: See exceptions listed below for certain types and causes of allergy, arthritis, epilepsy, hives, hypertension - or rheumatism--which will be assigned "2", if so reported. Otherwise, these diseases and all other conditions included in the following list of selected conditions will be assigned "1", regardless of onset--i.e., whether 3 mos + or -3 mos.

Absence (loss) of breast, ear, eye, kidney, larynx (voice box), lip, limb(s), lung, nose, or tongue
AIDS
Alcoholism (as in 303)
Allergy, any, EXCEPT cases with onset in past 3 mos AND due to drugs (995.2), bee sting (989.5), venomous bites (such as snake and spider) (989.5), chemicals (989.9), procedures in 996-999, to contactants (including sunburn) in 692 or substances taken internally (693) or radiation (990)
Arteriosclerosis
Arthritis, any type or cause, EXCEPT when due to current acute injury
Asthma, any type
Bronchiectasis
Calculi (stones) any part of urinary system
Cancer, any type
Cardiac condition, any type
Cataract, any type or origin (as in 366)
Cerebral palsy (and synonyms) (as in 343)
Cerebrovascular disease (as in 430-435, 437)
Cirrhosis of liver
Clawfoot
Cleft palate
Clubfoot
Color blindness (in 368.5)
Congenital condition, any
Coronary condition (as in 413-414)
Cyst, any site or type
Deafmutism; other total deafness in X05
Detachment of retina (in 361)
Diabetes, any form
Drug addiction or dependence (as in 304)
Emphysema
Epilepsy (as in 345) EXCEPT when due to current acute injury
Flatfoot, fallen arches
Glaucoma, any type or origin (as in 365)
Goiter
Gout, any type or cause
"Growth" (in) (on) any site
Harelip
Hay fever (any synonyms) (as in 477)
Heart or cardiac disease, any type or cause
Hemeralopia (day blindness) (in 368.1)

- C. Selected Conditions Coded "1", Regardless of Onset continued
- Hemorrhoids (piles)
Hernia (or "rupture") (as in 550-553)
Hypertension, except that arising in current pregnancy
Loss--See Absence, pg. 7
Mental deficiency, or retardation (as in X19)
Mental disorders of types in 300-306 (except 305.0), 310, 312-316
Mole (pigmented) (nonpigmented) (benign) (malignant)
Mongolism (or synonym)
Multiple sclerosis
Neoplasm (any in 140-239)
Neuroses (in 300)
Nyctalopia (night blindness) (in 368.6)
Optic nerve disorders (in 377.0-377.2, 377.4-377.9)
Paralysis agitans (Parkinson's disease) any cause
Personality disorders (in 301)
Polyps, any site
Prostate condition, any
Psychosis, any type (as in 290-299)
Refractive errors (as in 367)
Retardation, mental (as in X19)
Retinal conditions (in 361,362,363.3)
Retroental fibroplasia
Rheumatic fever, active or inactive
Rheumatism (muscular) except due to current acute injury
Rupture meaning Hernia (as in 550-553)
Specific learning disturbances (as in X14)
Stones (calculi) any part of urinary system
Stroke or other cerebrovascular disease (as in 430-435, 437)
Thyroid (gland) condition, any
Trick knee
Tuberculosis, any site or stage
Tumor, any in 140-239
Ulcer of stomach, duodenum or jejunum
Varicose veins of any site

In addition, such terms as atrophy, contracture, deformity, degeneration, dystrophy, fibrosis, sclerosis-- of any site--will be coded "1", regardless of onset.

- D. When to Assign "2" (Acute)
- A codable condition is assigned "2" if it :

- (a) had its onset in past 3 mos. and does not qualify for "1" as in items B and C, above; or
- (b) is a current delivery or current complication of pregnancy or the puerperium in 630-676.

E. Assigning
The
Diagnostic
Code for
Acute,
Chronic, or
Unspecified

1. Conditions with a third ICD code for unspecified whether acute or chronic, as in bronchitis (490) or nephritis (583): HIS will use these "unspecified" codes only in rare cases in which the date of onset cannot be determined from any source.
2. Tonsil (and adenoid) conditions; 463 (acute); 474 (chronic).
 - a. If on Condition Page only, 463 will be used if -3 mos; 474.0-474.9, if 3 mos +
 - b. If on Hospital Page, and on a Condition Page --with or without surgery--474.0-474.9 will be used, regardless of onset.
3. Other conditions--not tonsil (or adenoid) conditions--having one ICD diagnostic code for acute, another for chronic:

The ICD modifiers "acute," "subacute," and "chronic," when stated will not determine the HIS coding of the condition. Instead the following guides are to be used:

- a. Any condition which qualifies for a "supplementary code" of "1" regardless of onset, will receive the diagnostic code for the chronic state of the condition. (For qualifications, see Item B, this Section.)
- b. Conditions with such modifiers stated with onset -3 mos will receive the diagnostic code for the acute state of the condition.
- c. Conditions with such modifiers stated with onset 3 mos + will receive the diagnostic code for the chronic state of the condition.

This Section deals with general rules for selecting the 3 or 4-digit code for diagnosis. Special or additional rules for hospital stays, and for impairments, injuries, complications of childbearing, and for "combining and merging" are in later Sections of this manual.

A. The Objective

The objective, in diagnostic code selection, is to make use of all of the information on the questionnaire to obtain the best possible description of the kind of disease and the part of the body affected, avoiding if possible the use of a symptom or ill-defined category, and neither overcoding or undercoding.

Whereas this Manual and the Short Index provide for most of the cases you are required to code, there will probably always be a small percent of unusual, complicated, or vague diagnostic statements that may cause coding problems. Coders and verifiers are urged to "spot" problems, and to seek supervisor help for cases which may require special knowledge or special judgment in order to assign the proper code or codes.

B. Expressions Indicating Doubt

The interviewer tries to get an adequate description of a condition and in certain cases asks for its cause and its kind. The medical coder uses these answers, and footnotes, in determining the diagnostic code. If the respondent expresses his own doubt or uncertainty by expressions such as "possibly," "probably," or says "____ or ____," or that something is "like" something, use the following restated guides:

1. If the condition is positively stated but the cause or kind is not, or expresses doubt in any way, ignore the cause or kind and code the condition as stated.
2. If the condition is not positively stated, but the cause or kind is, make use of the cause or kind in determining the code for the condition.
3. If the condition expresses doubt in any of the following ways, proceed as shown:
 - a. If qualified by "possibly" or "probably" or a similar expression, accept the condition.
 - b. If alternatives are listed, i.e., "____ or ____," or "____ like ____," accept the first condition given.

B. Expressions
Indicating
Doubt
Continued

4. Examples, using chronic conditions.

<u>Condition</u>	<u>Cause</u>	<u>Kind</u>	<u>Code</u>
a. Back trouble	Possible kidneys	D.K.	X80.Y (ignore kidneys)
b. Back trouble	D.K.	Probably slipped disc	X80.Y (ignore disc)
c. Bursitis or Arthritis	Blank	Blank	727.3 (code bursitis)
d. Rash like acne	D.K.	Blank	782.1 (code rash)
e. Possible asthma	D.K.	D.K.	493.9 (accept asthma)
f. Probably asthma	Heart	D.K.	428.1 (accept asthma and cause)
g. Asthma	Heart or Allergy	D.K.	493.9 (ignore cause)

C. Dagger
Asterisk
System

The Ninth Revision of the ICD contains a dual classification system for approximately 150 categories of certain diseases. One of the codes--marked with a dagger † --relates to the underlying disease process and the other--marked with an asterisk * --relates to the organ system to which the complication relates. See ICD, Vol. 1, page XXVI, for a detailed explanation of this system.

While the dagger-asterisk system is a unique coding process in the Ninth Revision of ICD, HIS WILL NOT use the dual classification system of coding.

If conditions reported are classifiable to the dagger-asterisk system, apply the following guidelines to select a diagnostic code:

1. CONDITIONS MUST BE REPORTED ON THE SAME CONDITION PAGE TO QUALIFY FOR THE DAGGER-ASTERISK SYSTEM OF CODING.
2. FOR HIS, THE CODE MARKED WITH THE DAGGER WILL BE USED SOLELY.
3. If a dagger code has been assigned and on a later Condition Page the Interviewer completes a Condition Page which receives the same 3-digit diagnostic code, merge the information and use the dagger code. Never use the same 3-digit diagnostic code more than once per person.

C. Dagger
Asterisk
System
Continued

EXAMPLE:

Condition Page 01 Person 02

3b. Arthritis 712.0*} Gout would be coded
3c. Gout 274.0†}

Condition Page 03 Person 02

3b. Gout 274.9} Gout would be coded
3c. DK }

Since Gout (dagger code) has been coded once for Person 02, the data for these two pages must be merged. However, if the Interviewer completes a later Condition Page for Arthritis; Arthritis (716.9) will be coded also.

D. Overcoding
Undercoding

Instructions will be given in Section IV, Combining and Merging, for using one code when two or more diseases or sites can be combined into one condition diagnostic code and one Condition page.

1. Using separate codes when one code is sufficient is called "overcoding". If a condition is given and the cause of the condition can be found as an adjectival modifier for the condition, example--heart trouble with cause of hypertension or a footnote on the hypertension page of "same condition as.....," this can be combined into one diagnostic code (402.9) and one Condition Page.
2. Failure to code separately conditions that do not combine or conditions that do not get the same diagnostic code is called "undercoding." If a condition is given on one Condition Page (such as heart trouble, and hypertension is given on another Condition Page) without any footnote linking the two Condition Pages (such as "same condition as....") these two conditions will be coded separately (heart trouble (429.9) and hypertension (401.9).

E. Arrested
Inactive
Corrected
Chronic
Conditions

1. HIS does not use ICD V-codes for arrested conditions. For TWO diseases ONLY, HIS has special codes for arrested conditions as follows, as shown in Appendix III:
 - 019 Tuberculosis (pulmonary) (any site), arrested or inactive
 - 399 Rheumatic fever, inactive (old) (history)
Includes rheumatic fever (and synonyms), with no mention of rheumatic heart disease.

These codes must be used when tuberculosis or rheumatic fever is SAID to be arrested, inactive, corrected, or cured--whether this is the condition, the cause or the kind--and whether or not surgery is involved.

2. For other corrected or cured conditions with surgery involved, see Item I of this Section.

F. "Active"
Cause
and
Later
Condition
Pages

The Impairment Section and other places in the HIS Coding Manual instructs the coder to code the cause of a condition also if the cause is a present, active disease. (See Appendix I, Item D for definition of active.)

If an "active cause" is to be coded and on a later Condition Page the SAME condition is given; only ONE Condition Page will be coded. A separate Condition Page will not be created for the "active cause" as the Interviewer has already completed a Condition Page.

If the Interviewer has not completed a Condition Page for the "active cause", the coder will create a Condition Page for the "active cause."

G. Symptoms
and
Troubles
General

1. Many symptoms--particularly those expected to be reported frequently are listed in the Short Index--examples being cough, headache, pain, stiffness, swelling, diarrhea, vomiting and weakness. An extensive listing of "symptoms" is given at the end of the Short Index.

The general rule is that a symptom is to be coded in terms of its cause if the cause is given by the respondent.

2. For "nerves" or nervous or mental trouble due to various causes, and for conditions which are due to "nerves." see Item H, this Section.
3. For symptoms, troubles, and anything else, due to injury, code the injury only. For complications of surgery, see also Item I, this Section.
4. When symptoms and troubles, with onset of 3 mos +, are to be coded as Impairments in the X-code, see Section V.
5. For symptoms, -3 mos and symptoms not mentioned in G, 1-4, use the following guides:

Symptoms due to:

- a. Old age: See Appendix III, 797
Example: Weakness (780.7) due to old age, code 797 only
- b. Menopause: See Appendix III, 627.2
Example: Headache (784.0) due to menopause, code 627.2 only
- c. Other symptoms: Code the OTHER only unless one of the codes is classifiable to 001-779 or an X-code.
Example: Dizziness (780.4) due to upset stomach, code 536.8 only.
- d. causes that are not medical conditions or are not classified in ICD or by HIS: Code the symptom only. Such causes as "having too many children," ordinary bad winter, or summer weather, getting feet wet, sitting in a draft, code the symptom only.
Example: Headache (784.0) due to hot weather, code 784.0 only.
- e. More specific disease names: the general rule is to code the disease only.
Example: Seizures (780.3) due to epilepsy, code 345.9 only.

G. Symptoms and Troubles General Continued

6. Multiple Symptoms of Unknown Cause in the Same Illness

Same illness may be determined as follows:

Multiple symptoms are on the SAME CONDITION PAGE.

Interviewer WRITES a footnote of "same condition as ..." that links Condition Pages together with multiple symptoms.

Some other evidence on the Questionnaire that links symptoms together.

When multiple symptoms are involved, the rule will be to select one, as follows:

a. If one is said by the respondent to be more serious than the other, select it.

b. Prefer a code in 001-779 over one in 780-796.
Example: Pain in head (784.0) and eye (379.8), code 379.8 only.

c. If both are in the same 4th digit series, prefer the lowest number--i.e., 4th digits 0, 1, 2, over 3, 4, 5, etc.

Example: Acid stomach (536.8) and irritation stomach (536.9)--code 536.8 only.

d. If both upper and lower digestive system symptoms are present, prefer those of the lower site; if both upper and lower respiratory symptoms are present, prefer the lower.

Examples: Nausea (787.0) and diarrhea (558), code 558 only.

Nosebleed (784.7) and wheezing (786.0), code 786.0 only

e. If one is codable to the X-code, and the other is not, select the X-code.

Example: Headache (784.0) and chronic stiff back, code X80.Y only.

f. If none of these selecting guides seem to apply, take the first one mentioned.

G. Symptoms and Troubles
General
Continued

Troubles---kinds and causes:

7. "Trouble," "ailment," "attack," "condition," "defect," "disease," "disorder"--of any site--is regarded as ill-defined although codes can be found for them. For these terms the interviewer asks "What kind of is it?" A more specific description--such as myocarditis, rather than heart trouble, or psycho-neurosis, rather than mental disorder---is sought.
8. Make use of all available information in order to arrive at the most specific disease name. In case the questioning produces only a symptom or something else ill-defined, code to the "trouble," as a general rule.
 - a. Exception: When the trouble is something in 799.2 and the cause or kind is a symptom in 307 or something else in 290-316, prefer 290-316 over 799.2. Cause also must be considered when coding troubles, especially when the cause is psychogenic or due to nerves. (See Item H, this Section)

9. Examples in coding symptoms and "troubles:"

<u>Condition</u>	<u>Cause</u>	<u>"Kind"</u>	<u>Code</u>
a. Skin trouble	Nerves	Rash and Itching	306.3
b. Heart trouble	Overwork	DK	429.9
c. Stomach trouble	DK	Acid stomach and pain	537.9
d. Stomach trouble	Nerves	Pain	306.4
e. Lung condition Not TB	DK	Cough; spits blood	518.8
f. Bronchial condition	DK	Bronchiectasis	494
g. Gallbladder trouble	DK	Can't eat certain foods	575.9
h. Liver disease	DK	Jaundice	573.9
i. Upset stomach	hangover	Blank	305.0
j. Nervous trouble	DK	Hands shake	799.2
k. Weakness and nervous	Old Age	Blank	290.9
l. Indigestion	Old Age	Blank	536.8
m. Headache	Nerves	Blank	784.0
n. Thyroid trouble	DK	Feels jumpy	246.9

H. Nervous
or
Mental
Trouble

See Appendix III, categories 290-316 and 799.2 for HIS modifications and instructions. Note inclusions and exclusions in category 799.2 (nervousness, NOS).

See also Short Index under such headings as: Addiction; Alcohol; Breakdown; nervous; Depression; Disease, mental; Disorder, mental; Disturbance, emotional; Drunkenness; Emotional; Excitable; Exhaustion; Hangover; Menopause; Mental; "Mind bad;" Nerves; Old Age; Psychosis; Senile; Tension; Tic; Upset; Worry.

Following are descriptions of nervous conditions, with codes:

1. Nervous trouble, can't sleep at night, feels like something crawling on her: Code 307.4
2. Nervous, due to overactive and toxic goiter: Code 316.6 and 242.0
3. Pains in head, upper back and shoulder, past year, due to lack of sleep and nerves: Code 307.4
4. Nervous, depressed, due to epilepsy: Code 316.8 and 345.9
5. Takes medicine for insomnia; has chronic nervous trouble, feels shaky: Code 307.4
6. Nerves, get dizzy spells: Code 799.2
7. Diarrhea due to nerves: Code 306.4
8. Worry over personal problems causes my fatigue: code 300.5
9. Nervous trouble, can't remember things, due to hardening of the arteries: Code 316.8 and 440.9
10. Migraine headache due to nerves: Code 346.9 only

- I. "Removal" and other Operations Listed on Condition Page Operations, removal of, repair of, complications resulting from surgical procedures with or without the disease or injury for which surgery was required, and impairments resulting from surgery are often reported on a Condition Page. Coding problems arise when this happens. Use the following instructions as a guide for coding Condition Pages with any of the above mentioned situations:

1. Condition Pages, with surgical procedures, which will be deleted

- a. Delete the Condition Page if a written entry states that surgery was performed over 1 year ago, and within the past year, there has been NO complications, disability, limitation or difficulty with the surgery and the disease or injury for which surgery was required is not mentioned.

Example: Cataract removed 2 years ago (no complication, disability or trouble seeing in past year due to the surgery or the cataract)
Delete the page.

2. Condition Pages with surgical procedures, which will be coded.

Note: Unless a Condition Page states, as in 1 above, that surgery was performed over 1 year ago, for HIS, it will be assumed that surgery was done within the past year. A Hospital Page for the surgery is not required.

a. Names of operations only (in past year)

Names of operations (in past year) on Condition Page with no present surgical complications mentioned and with no mention of disease or injury which required the surgery will be coded to 799.9 (unknown), except:

1. Circumcision, not routine: Code 605
2. Obstetrical procedures: Code as Delivery
3. Tonsillectomy (or adenoidectomy): Code 474.0

For example: Names of operations such as hysterectomy--with no surgical complication mentioned, and without mention of the disease or injury for which surgery was required will be coded to 799.9.

I. "Removal"
and other
Operations
Listed on
Condition
Page
Continued

2. Condition Pages with surgical procedures, which
will be coded (continued)

b. Operations (in past year) with cause; no
complications

Surgical procedures on a Condition Page with the disease or injury requiring the surgery given and no complications or impairments resulting from the surgery; code the disease or injury only.

c. Operations with complications, impairments, or
both; no cause given

For surgical procedures on the Condition Page with resulting complications, and/or impairments; code the complication, or the impairment or code both the complication and the impairment given.

Code all complications of surgery (See ICD, Vol. 2, Complications, surgical procedures; ICD, Vol. 1; and Appendix III), and code any resulting impairment, following all instructions in Section V, Impairments and Their Causes, for coding impairments .

Example: Impairments may be a result of the surgery--such as breast removed--, or a nature of complication of surgery--such as stiff leg, from surgery on leg 6 months ago.

NOTE: Except for impairments, the precise nature of the complication of surgery will not be coded-- such as nausea, due to surgery on intestine, code only the complication (997.4).

d. Operations with complications, impairments or both;
cause given

Surgical procedures on the Condition Page with the disease or injury requiring the surgery given and resulting complications, impairments or both; code the disease for which surgery was done, the complication, and any resulting impairment as instructed in 2c above.

If surgery was done for an old injury--such as broken leg 4 months ago--, or an old infection-- such as kidney infections as a child--; do not code the old injury or old infection as a separate condition.

NOTE: When a Condition Page states that surgery was performed over 1 year ago and a complication of surgery or an impairment has resulted from the operation, code the complication and/or the impairment; however, the condition for which surgery was performed will not be coded if it has not been present in the past 12 months.

- I. "Removal" 3. Examples, post operative terms on Condition Page.
- and other Operations
- Listed on Condition Page
- Continued

Rule	Present Comp. Due to Surgery	Operation Performed	Cause Requiring Operation	Codes
a. 2a	None	Hysterectomy	DK	799.9
b. 2b	None	Hip operation	Perthe's disease	732.1
c. 2d	Nervous, due to swollen arm	Breast removal	Cancer	X32.2; 457.0; 174.9
d. 2d	Stomach trouble	Gallbladder removed	Gallstones	574.2; 997.4
e. 2b	None	Cleft Palate repair	Cleft Palate	X91.9
f. 2d	None	Leg removed	Diabetes	X28.3; 250.0
g. 2d	Stitch abscess	Operation	Bowel obstructed due to cancer	998.5 159.0
h. 2d	Trouble walking	Operation on hip	3 mos + fracture	998.8; X89.0
i. 2c	Nausea	Kidney surgery	DK	997.4

J. Allergies

1. See the Short Index for reference to allergy under such headings as:
Allergy; Asthma; Bronchitis; Conjunctivitis; Cystitis;
Dermatitis; Eczema; Gastroenteritis; Headache; Hay fever;
Hives; Migraine; Poison ivy; Urticaria.
2. In most cases, the present effects and causes of allergies determines the code to be assigned. A code will be assigned for each body system mentioned in the present effects of an allergy.

Example: Q. 3b Allergies

- Q. 3c Sun, pork, melon, onions and bananas
Q. 3f Sick to stomach, difficulty breathing
and headache

Three codes are needed in the above example:
gastrointestinal allergy (558); respiratory allergy (493.0) and allergic headache (346.2).

3. For allergy associated with shots see Appendix III, 999.4, 999.5 and the Short Index under ALLERGY, due to shots. If a skin reaction to shots is STATED to be allergic, code as for DERMATITIS, due to vaccine (693.0).
4. For allergy due to drugs taken internally for treatment purposes--not preventive vaccines--code to 995.2.
 - a. If a specified type of allergic reaction is given, code to the specified allergy.

For example: Rash and itching due to taking penicillin.
See DERMATITIS due to drug, taken internally (693.0).

K. Disc Conditions

1. See Appendix III, 722 and 839; see also Short Index under DISC.
2. The term disc, NOS, refers to the intervertebral discs as in 722.0-722.9. If a report indicates a condition involving some other disc--for example--optic disc--code as reported.

K. Disc
Conditions
Continued

3. For specified conditions 3 mos + with a disc injury (839) as the original cause:
 - a. If dislocation, prolapse, protusion, rupture, slipped, injury NOS, or displacement is given as the original disc injury and the following conditions are given as the present effect, code as follows:
 1. Neuritis, radiculitis, pain or trouble codable to X80-X89, code to 722.0-722.2, by site in Short Index.
 2. Sciatica, code to 722.1 if site is thoracic (middle) or lumbar (low back); otherwise, code sciatica without reference to disc.
 3. Arthritis, paralysis, and conditions other than those mentioned above will be coded to the condition given, without reference to disc.
 4. In no case will the number 839 be used for a 3 mos + disc injury.
4. For present conditions due to surgery for a disc condition; see rules in Item I of this Section.

For example:

A stiff neck, 3 mos +, due to operation for a slipped cervical disc, would be coded to X80, 997.9 and 722.0.

A slipped disc said to have been treated surgically more than one year ago, with no present complications and no disability in the past year would NOT be coded.

A slipped disc said to have been treated surgically more than one year ago, with disability in the past year and no specified complication due to surgery, slipped disc only would be coded.

L. Growths

See Short Index and Vol. 2, under Growth. Growth with perhaps an ill-defined or vague reply as to kind will notwithstanding be coded as for Neoplasm, Vol 2.

Growth--further explained to be something clearly NOT a neoplasm, will be coded as reported.

- M. Pregnancy with Hypertension and other Toxemias See ICD categories 630-676 and Section VII of this Manual for full instructions for coding conditions related to childbearing. The numbers 630-676 refer to certain conditions arising in a current childbearing experience, and are coded as "acute." If the woman is no longer pregnant, hypertension and other conditions included in 630-676 will be coded as they would be in the non-pregnant state. If the woman is not pregnant, but says she had hypertension or any in 630-676 when she was pregnant but does not have this now, treat the report as history, and do not code.
- N. Spelling Problems The coder will refer to the supervisor any terms spelled in an unintelligible manner. If no one can determine what was intended, and the episode is otherwise codable, use 799.9 (unknown).
- O. Typhoid and other Carrier States These are classified by ICD to V02.0--V02.9. HIS does not use the V-codes. If a person is reported to be a CARRIER of a disease, do not code. However, if a symptom or disease is reported along with the carrier state, code the disease or symptom, not V02.
- P. When to Use 799.8 or 799.9 See ICD 799.8 (Other ill-defined conditions). This code may be used if some disease process is stated--such as fibrosis NOS--but the site or type is not mentioned--and the indexing shows no code for unspecified site or type.
- Use 799.9 when an illness must be coded, but the disease process is not stated and there is not enough information to tell what the condition is.
- Q. Terms Not in the Short Index or Vols. 1 or 2 Consult the supervisor.

A. "Combining"

1. General

"Combining" (a term of convenience) refers to the procedure for assigning a single diagnostic code when certain of two or more closely related conditions are reported for the same person. The kinds of conditions involved in this procedure have been established by ICD and/or by HIS as shown in Appendix III.

Combining may involve two or more related conditions on the same Condition Page; or it may involve related conditions on separate Condition Pages; in the latter situation "Merging" as shown in Item B of this Section becomes in order.

Conditions which can be combined have their own code numbers, but when combined the single code to be used may be different from that of any of the parts, or it may be the same as one of the parts. For example: cold is 460, sore throat is 462, but combined the code is 465.8 but for cold (460) with cough (786.2), the code is 460.

"Combining," for HIS, includes also the selection of a single condition when one or more conditions in the same series are also reported; for example, as shown in Appendix III, only one code in 140-239 is to be coded.

2. Specific rules

Follow all ICD and HIS rules for combining, selecting, or otherwise using one code when two or more related conditions are reported for the same person on the same Condition Page or on separate Condition Pages. Consult the Short Index first, and if the conditions to be coded are not listed, go to Vol. 2 of ICD.

- a. Look for the word with indented directly under a term, or in parenthesis after it, in conjunction with such terms as asthma; bronchitis; cold; diarrhea; disease, heart; hay fever; influenza; pneumonia; sinusitis; tonsillitis; ulcer, stomach; whooping cough; and many others; code as indicated.

For example: if a person has hay fever and also asthma, code as for hay fever with asthma--using the single code 493.0.

A. "Combining"
Continued

2. Specific
rules
continued

- b. In order to combine terms listed in the Short Index in quotation marks(" "), the term in quotes must be either describing a condition or causing the condition. The conditions may also be combined if they are on separate Condition Pages and the interviewer describes them as being "same as." For example: heart failure due to arteriosclerosis can be combined to 440.9. However, if heart failure and arteriosclerosis are on separate Condition Pages and the interviewer has not linked the two conditions, code heart failure (428.9) and arteriosclerosis also (440.9).
- c. Certain diseases can be combined if they are the SAME illness and not linked by the word WITH.

SAME ILLNESS can be determined as follows:

1. If conditions are on same Condition Page.
2. Interviewer WRITES a footnote "same condition as" that links two conditions together.

NOTE: ICD or the Short Index must have a diagnostic code that combines the two conditions.
For example: heart disease on one Condition Page and hypertension on another Condition Page with footnote "same as condition...". would be coded as disease, heart, hypertensive. (402.9).

Arthritis on one Condition Page and bursitis on another Condition Page with footnote "same condition as.." would be coded as two separate conditions. Arthritis cannot be found linked with bursitis.

3. Some other evidence on the Questionnaire that links conditions together such as "same accident as..." or other types of footnotes.

d. Combining certain acute infections

Acute infections or inflammations of the respiratory system and other parts of the body NOT codable to 001-136, which are reported as due to or with infections codable to 001-136 will be combined and coded to 001-136 only. For example: if strep throat (034.0) and cold (460) is reported for the same person, combine the two conditions and code strep throat (034.0) only.

A. "Combining"

Continued

2. Specific
rules
continued

- e. Look for the word multiple in the Short Index under such headings as Allergy; Burn; Contusion; Infection, respiratory, upper; Injury, superficial, Pain; Sprain; Trouble; Wound, open; and code as shown. When there is a code or a rule for "multiple sites" in the Short Index, Appendix III or in Vol. 2, make use of it.

B. "Merging"

1. "Merging" refers to the consolidating of the data about medical care, date of onset, disability, etc., when conditions or sites that can be combined are on separate Condition Pages.
2. Determine the single diagnostic code to be assigned (as shown in Item A of this Section) and apply this to one of the conditions--usually the one showing the greatest disability or providing the most complete information.
3. For data shown before "K2" of the questionnaire:
 - a. Cut-down in past 2 weeks; show the maximum number of "days" of each type.
 - b. Date of onset: show the earliest date of onset.
4. For data beyond "K2":
If this is shown for at least one of the conditions to be combined, use it. If shown for 2 or more, merge the data and record "yes," and the larger, or earlier, or more significant shown in the other items.

A. General

See Appendix I for: history and development of the X-code; general characteristics of impairments; ICD codes for impairments; how late effects of disease or injury are coded for HIS; the list of etiologic (cause) codes; and the full numerical classification of impairments by type and site (X00-X99). The X-codes for impairments are considered 4-digit codes, but the "X" in the first digit serves only to identify a condition as an impairment. The first digit is always "X"; the next two digits (00-99) tell the type and site; and the 4th digit (0-9, X or Y) tells the cause.

The majority of impairments are coded to the X-code only if present 3 months or longer. However, conditions such as loss of eye or limb, structural deformities of limbs, back, or skull, artificial orifice (opening), mental deficiency (which are always or usually permanent defects) are coded to the X-code regardless of date of onset. Any condition to be coded with "X" in the first digit is given the 1-digit supplementary code of "1" (chronic), as mentioned in Section II of this Manual.

Generally, impairments are the present effects of some past disease, condition, or event.

Ordinarily, when a present effect is coded as an impairment in the X-codes, the cause will not be coded; cause will be shown by the fourth digit etiology code. For example, the etiology code "0" would show accidental injury, and the old injury would not be coded separately. However, if the cause is an ACTIVE disease (see HIS rule in Appendix I, Item D, for definition of ACTIVE), the disease will be coded also. Instructions will be given in each division of this Section for coding cause.

Impairments involving extremities and the trunk will be coded by the site involved, with a body part receiving only one code. See Items B, C, and D of this Section for further coding instructions.

B. Procedure**Procedure for Assigning X-Codes for Impaired Extremities**

Problems may arise in assigning X-codes for impaired extremities.

The following is a summary of the procedure to be used:

With the exception of the X-codes for absence, all of the X-codes for extremities include one X-code for the part attached to the trunk (arm and leg) and another for the remainder of the extremity (hand and/or finger(s) (thumb) and foot and/or toe(s)).

1. When both parts have the same type of impairment, code only to the part attached to the trunk of the body. Thus, "partially paralyzed left arm and hand" (and "partially paralyzed left arm and fingers") would be coded only to partial paralysis of the arm (X53). The codes for the other parts of the extremities (hand, foot, etc.) are used only when the arm or leg is not reported to be impaired or these parts have a more severe type of impairment than the arm or leg. (See 2 below.)
2. If the parts of an extremity have different types of impairments proceed as follows:
 - a. First code absence of finger(s) (thumb(s)) only (X22), spina bifida (X71.9), congenital dislocation of hip (X75), flatfoot (X77), or clubfoot (X78) if reported and
 - b. for the remaining or other parts of an extremity (upper or lower) code to the part with the more severe type of impairment and ignore any remaining part(s) of that extremity.
3. Where more than one extremity is involved, and
 - (1) they have the same type of impairment, and
 - (2) they are both upper or lower, or interviewer fails to state which side, assume both are on the same side of the body and use the X-code for combinations of extremities (i.e., "arms, both," "one side, hemiplegia," etc.)
4. If fingers or toes are given and the report does not state if one or more hands or feet are involved, assume one hand or foot.

C. Priority**Priority in Assigning X-Codes for Different Types of Impairments**

A person may receive several X-codes, but within the code range of X00-X19 only one code in each category may be assigned for a person.

A person may receive several X-codes in the code range of X20-X89. This range of codes will be assigned by body part with a body part receiving only one code within this range. For example, a person may have a paralyzed arm with the hand deformed, but for HIS only the paralyzed arm would be coded. The most severe impairment reported for a body part of a person will be coded; using the priority order listed below:

1. Absence (except tip of digit) X20-X34
2. Complete (NOS) paralysis X40-X49
3. Partial paralysis X50-X59
4. Paralysis, complete or partial, sites except extremities X60-X64
5. Specified deformity X70-X79
6. Non-paralytic orthopedic impairment X80-X89
7. Loss of sensation X12
8. Absence of tip of digit (below first joint) X35

EXCEPTIONS to above priority order of coding body parts are: absence of finger(s) (thumb(s)) only (X22), Spina bifida (X71), congenital dislocation of hip (X75), flatfoot (X77), and clubfoot (X78), which will always be coded in addition to any other impairment code assigned for a body part.

D. Multiple Impairments Same Person

Guides for coding multiple impairments per person are as follows:

1. A person may receive several X-codes.
2. With rare exceptions, no specific body part or site may receive more than one X-code. These exceptions relate only to absence of finger(s), congenital dislocation of hip, clubfoot, flatfoot, and spina bifida. These cases are discussed in more detail in the sections related to them.

D. Multiple Impairments Same Person Continued

- Guides for coding multiple impairments per person--continued
3. The use of certain X-codes prohibits the use of other X-codes or a given range of X-codes. In the range X00-X19 only one X-code for each type of impairment in this range may be assigned per person. In the range X20-X90, X-codes which prohibit the use of certain other codes are indicated by (1) stated instructions to that effect, or (2) the term "Prohibits X--" accompanying the designation of the code.
 4. Within a range of X-codes related to a type of impairment (i. e., paralysis, absence, etc.) always prefer the lower number X-codes (i. e., those which appear first.) Thus, a person with "paralysis of left side" and "paralysis of right arm" would NOT receive the X-code for paralysis of upper extremity, both, even though both arms are paralyzed. This is because the person should have been coded to hemiplegia since that X-code appears first and use of that code means that the left arm has already been coded. Since it cannot be coded again, the person should also receive the X-code for upper extremity, one. In this way all affected body parts are coded and none has received more than one code.
 5. The rule for combining corresponding extremities into one code (hemiplegia; legs, both, etc.) applies only when each is classified to the same type of impairment ("partial paralysis of right arm and partial paralysis of left arm"). When the body parts or sites have a different type of impairment, each must be coded separately. For instance, "paralysis of left arm and partial paralysis of right arm" could NOT be coded to upper extremity, both. Since two types of impairments are involved, each arm would have to be coded separately (paralysis of one upper extremity and partial paralysis of one upper extremity.)
 6. Unless two extremities can be combined into one code as in 5 above, each impaired extremity will receive at least one X-code, except when deformity of extremity is involved.

Since the deformity codes for extremities do not distinguish between one or both upper or lower extremities (or, one or both hands, finger(s) on hand, feet, etc.,) two deformed extremities may receive only one X-code, if they are both upper or both lower. However, two X-codes would be assigned for a deformed upper extremity and a deformed lower extremity. Also, two X-codes would be assigned for a deformed right arm and a deformed left hand (or fingers on the left hand).

E. Impairments and Their Causes
Etiology

1. Impairments are coded by using a 4-digit code with X always the first digit to indicate an impairment. The next two digits show the type and site; the 4th digit the cause (etiology) of the impairment.
2. The following list of etiology codes will be used for any impairment in X00-X99:

- .0 Accident or injury except at birth
- .1 Cerebrovascular disease (stroke)
(with arteriosclerosis) (with hypertension)
- .2 Neoplasm
- .3 Diabetes (with cataract or glaucoma)
- .4 Poliomyelitis
- .5 Cataract with glaucoma
- .6 Cataract without glaucoma
- .7 Glaucoma without cataract
- .8 Other eye diseases
- .9 Congenital origin NEC or birth injury
- .X Other conditions not in .0 to .9
(non-traumatic) (non-congenital)
(hereditary) (old age) ("age" NOS)
- .Y Unknown or unspecified origin

3. Determining etiology code for multiple causes of a single impairment:

Determine the etiology code for each of the causes and assign the one which is highest on the list of etiologies. For example: if an accidental injury is at least one of the multiple causes, the 4th digit code would be .0 since .0 is at the top of the list.

NOTE: The etiology code .0 (accident or injury) can only be used for impairments occurring as the result of a sudden, one-time injury or exposure; thus impairments caused by continuous loud noise, continuous heavy lifting, constant strain, etc., will not be considered one-time occurrences and will be assigned .X for etiology.

F. Visual Impairments

See Appendix III, ICD categories 360-379, 743 and 871 for HIS modifications of eye and vision conditions.

1. Visual Impairments

- a. As shown in Appendix I, the four HIS categories used for CODING various degrees of visual impairments are:

X00 Blind in both eyes

X01 Visual impairment in both eyes

X02 Blind in one eye, visually impaired in other eye

X03 Blind or visually impaired in one eye only; other eye good vision or not mentioned.

NOTE: One or more ICD disease codes for an eye condition is permitted, but only ONE code in X00-X03 will be coded per person.

- b. An X-code for blindness or visual impairment will be assigned only from entries on a Condition Page; without reference to the disease or eye condition of a person. The fact that a person has an eye disease or condition does not warrant assigning a visual impairment code. A code in X00-X03 will be assigned only in the following situation:

1. There is a WRITTEN or STATED indication on a Condition Page that a person is blind or has a visual impairment. The WRITTEN or STATED terms which will be considered visual impairments and coded to X00-X03 are given in F3.

F. Visual Impairments

2. Date of Onset

- a. A Condition Page for visual impairments will only be coded if the visual impairment has an onset of 3 mos + with the exception of b and c below. For Condition Pages with visual impairments indicated that are -3 mos (other than b and c below), the visual impairment is not to be coded, only the disease or injury causing the impairment will be coded if the cause is known. If the cause is unknown, 379.9 (unspecified disorders of the eye) will be coded. For rare cases of always chronic eye conditions resulting from an injury -3 months, with indication of a visual impairment also, the eye injury code, the chronic eye condition and an X-code for the visual impairment will be coded.
- b. Regardless of onset, eyes knocked out or other STATED terms indicating loss of eye(s) will be coded to X00, X02 or X03. The code used will be determined from Interviewer's written entry on the Condition Page.
- c. Cataract (366.-), Glaucoma (365.-), retinal conditions (361.- and 362.-), are eye diseases which are always chronic. If a visual impairment is indicated with these eye conditions, the visual impairment will be coded also, regardless of onset. Instructions for coding Color blindness (368.5), night blindness (368.6) and day blindness (368.1) are given in Item F4 of this Section.

NOTE: This rule does not apply to conditions such as cataract, detached retina or others corrected by surgery, when the surgery was done more than one year ago, with no limitation or disability reported in the past year. See Section III, Item I.

F. Visual Impairments
Continued

3. Selecting X-Code in X00-X03

- a. After determining that a visual impairment is to be coded, use an X-code in X00-X03 to code WRITTEN or STATED entries of blindness, terms indicating visual impairments or defective vision. Using Interviewer's entries on Condition Page, select a code from eye impairment table that best describes the status of a person's visual impairment. If there is no clear indication that only one eye is involved, assume that both eyes are involved.

No vision, can't see, blind, with clear indication that a person cannot see, will be coded as for blindness in one or both eyes. For entries of visual impairment, other than blindness, code any combination of the terms listed below to the X-code which best describes the person's visual impairment:

1. WRITTEN entries of blindness in one or both eyes; half-blind, no vision, partially blind or blind spot in one or both eyes; bad, blurred, defective, limited, poor, double, problem with, or trouble with---linked with eyesight, seeing, sight or vision

Any active disease reported as causing a visual impairment will be coded also, if the disease meets HIS definition of an active disease (see Appendix I, Item D, for definition).

4. Eye diseases eligible for ICD code and X-Code

- a. Double vision (+3 mos), color blindness, night blindness and day blindness will receive BOTH an eye condition diagnostic code (ICD) and an eye impairment code (X-Code). Assume both eyes are visually impaired when assigning the X-code unless one eye is indicated.

F. Visual
Impairments
Continued

5. Ill-defined eye conditions

- a. Disease(s) of the eye(s) and ill-defined terms such as bad eyes, eyestrain, weak eyes, eye trouble, with NO STATED visual impairment will be coded to ICD disease codes only. If a visual impairment is indicated with ill-defined eye conditions, code the impairment, omitting the ill-defined eye condition.

- b. Allergy or migraine causing any eye or vision problem of any kind or onset: code the allergy or migraine only.

6. Assigning Etiology Code

- a. See Section V, Item E, for list of etiology codes and priority order for assigning etiology.

G. Hearing Impairments

See Appendix III, categories 380-389 and 744.0-744.3.

See Appendix I, categories X05-X09

See Short Index, Deafness, Hearing Impairment

1. Degree of Hearing Impairment

- a. Conditions that qualify as hearing impairments will be classified to one of the five categories listed below:

X05	Deafness, both ears Includes persons who are reported "deaf" in <u>both ears</u> , or reported to have no useful hearing in both ears, or can't hear, both ears. Excludes terms such as "a little deaf," "partially deaf"; code as for hearing impairment.
X06	Other hearing impairment involving <u>both ears</u> Includes any bilateral hearing impairment which cannot be coded to X05.
X07	Deafness or hearing impairment of any degree involving <u>one ear</u> .
X08	Deafness, NOS Includes "deafness," "deaf," "can't hear" and unable to determine whether one or both ears are involved. Excludes terms such as "a little deaf," "partially deaf"; code as for hearing impairment.
X09	Impaired hearing except as in X05-X08 (unable to determine whether one or both ears are involved.)

- b. In order to classify hearing impairments to X05-X07, two things must be determined:

1. Whether or not the person is deaf in both ears
2. Whether one or both ears are involved

Determinations in b1 will be based on condition entries such as deaf, deafness, deafmute, or "can't hear."

Determinations in b2 will be based on Interviewer's entries for condition stating whether one ear (X07) or both ears (X06) are involved. Prefer the entry in Item 3g of the Condition Page over others.

G. Hearing Impairments Continued

1. Degree of Hearing Impairment--Continued

b. Continued

X08 will only be used for entries of "deaf," "deafness," "can't hear," with no indication whether one or both ears are involved.

X09 will be used only when a hearing impairment is indicated with no indication whether one or both ears are involved.

2. Date of Onset

a. Conditions qualifying for X05 and X08 will be coded as chronic, regardless of onset.

X06-X07, X09 will be coded only for conditions 3 mos + .

b. Entry of "deafmute" will be coded to X05 and X11, regardless of onset.

c. Hearing impairments -3 mos, with cause known will be coded to cause only; if cause is unknown, code 388.4 (other abnormal auditory perception).

3. Coding disease causing hearing impairments

a. Any active disease reported as causing a hearing impairment will be coded also, if the disease meets HIS definition of an active disease (see Appendix I, Item D, for definition.)

4. Coding both X-Code and ear disease code

a. X06, X07, X09 due to or consisting of tinnitus ("ringing in ears" and synonyms); code X06, X07 or X09 and tinnitus (388.3).

5. When X-Code not used

a. Hearing impairments codable to X07 or X09 caused by allergy will be coded to allergy only.

b. Hearing impairments codable to X07 caused by "wax in ear" will be coded to 380.4 only.

6. Assigning Etiology Code

See Section V, Item E for list of etiology codes and priority order for assigning etiology.

H. Speech Impairments

See Appendix III, categories 307.0, 307.9, 315.3, 315.5, 750.1, 784.4 and 784.5
See Appendix I, categories X10, X11 and X91.9

1. Only one speech defect per person is to be coded.
The two speech impairment codes are as follows:

X10 Stammering and stuttering

X11 Other speech defects

Includes persons with absence of larynx or tongue even if speech defect is not reported.

2. Date of Onset

- a. Absence of tongue or larynx will be treated as chronic, regardless of onset, and coded to X11 (whether or not speech is mentioned.)
- b. Stammering, stuttering, and other speech problems -3 mos will be coded per Short Index or ICD; 3 mos + to X10 or X11.
- c. Deafmute persons reported: code X05 and X11, regardless of onset.

3. Conditions not coded as speech defects

- a. Cleft palate: code X91.9, regardless of onset.

4. Coding disease causing speech impairment

- a. Any active disease reported as causing a speech impairment will be coded also, if the disease meets HIS definition of an active disease. (See Appendix I, Item D, for definition.)

5. Assigning Etiology Code

- a. See Section V, Item E, for list of etiology codes and priority order for assigning etiology.

I. Special
Sense
Impairments
NEC

See Appendix III, categories 781.1 and 782.0
See Appendix I, category X12

1. Date of Onset

a. Code as follows:

1. Loss or impairment of smell or taste;
-3 mos, 781.1; 3 mos +, X12

2. Numbness and burning sensation;
-3 mos, 782.0; 3 mos + X12

b. The above conditions -3 mos, due to a known cause will be coded to cause only.

2. With cause stated

a. For above conditions, 3 mos +, due to or caused by specified conditions or disease will be coded to disease only. (Ignore Active and Inactive disease rule.)

b. Only one X12 will be coded per person. If any other X-code in X40-X99 has been assigned for that person, omit X12.

3. Assigning Etiology Code

a. See Section V, Item E, for a list of etiology codes and priority order for assigning etiology.

J. Special Learning Disability and Mental Deficiency

See Appendix III, categories 315.0, 315.1, 315.2, 315.5, 317-319, 345 and 758.0
See Appendix I, categories X14 and X19

1. Special Learning Disability

- a. Conditions that indicate a specific learning disability such as ICD categories 315.0, 315.1, 315.2 and 315.5, will be coded to X14, regardless of onset, as specific learning disabilities are considered to be chronic by HIS.
- b. If mental deficiency or retardation is mentioned as causing the learning disability, code to X19 only.

2. Mental Deficiency or Retardation

- a. Code entries of mental deficiency or retardation, can't learn, slow learner, etc. to X19 and treat as chronic, regardless of onset.

NOTE: Use only one code per person in X14 and X19, preferring X19 over X14.

3. Coding Causative Disease

- a. Any active disease reported as causing learning disability or mental retardation will be coded also, if the disease meets HIS definition of an active disease. (See Appendix I, Item D, for definition.)

4. Assigning Etiology Code

- a. See Section V, Item E, for list of etiology codes and priority order for assigning etiology.

K. Absence of Extremities and Certain Other Sites

See Appendix III, categories 520.0, 525.1, 748.1, 748.3, 748.5, 753.0, 873, 885-887, and 895-897
See Appendix I, categories X20-X35, X90 and X92
See Short Index, Absence

1. Date of Onset

- a. Absence of extremities and body parts, other than teeth, will be treated as chronic, regardless of onset.

2. Missing body parts which will not be coded to X20-X35:

- a. absence of eye(s): code as for Blindness.
- b. absence of tooth, teeth: code per Short Index.
- c. absence of larynx, tongue or other oral structures: code to X11, Speech defects.
- d. absence of nose, lips or ears: code to X90.

3. Absence which will be coded to X30-X35

- a. absence of lung: code X30.
- b. absence of kidney: code X31.
- c. absence of breast: code X32.
- d. absence of rib(s), bone(s), muscle(s) of trunk: code X33

1. Includes: pelvic area, diaphragm and vertebrae. If any in X33 are missing due to surgery to remove a lung or kidney, code absence of part involved.
2. Any in X33 with paralysis, deformity, or orthopedic impairment of trunk, code to paralysis, deformity or orthopedic impairment, omit X33.
- e. absence of bone(s), joint(s), muscle(s), of extremity or extremities (includes hip) without loss of the extremity or extremities: code X34.
1. Any in X34 with paralysis, deformity or orthopedic impairment of the SAME body part, code to paralysis, deformity, or orthopedic impairment, omit X34.

K. Absence of Extremities and Certain Other Sites Continued

3. Absence which will be coded to X30-X35--continued
 - f. absence of tip(s) of finger(s) or toe(s) (below first joint) only: code X35.
 1. If any indication that more than tip(s) of finger(s) or toe(s) is missing, code to absence of that part, not X35.
 2. If tip(s) of finger(s) or toe(s) are missing and the SAME hand(s), arm(s), leg(s), foot or feet has entry of paralysis, deformity or orthopedic impairment, code to that impairment, not X35.
 4. Absence of extremity or extremities in X20-X29 with other X-codes
 - a. With any X-code in X40-X89 of SAME body part, code absence only. Code each body part mentioned, making use of multiple codes when possible.
 5. Coding absence of body parts not included in X20-X35
 - a. Absence of body parts not included in X20-X35 will be coded per ICD under Absence; if the cause is congenital, code the ICD code for congenital; if the cause is unknown, code as for acquired absence or disease NOS of that part.
 6. Absence, any site, due to surgery
 - a. For absence of a body part resulting from surgical procedures, follow rules given in Section III, Item I, Removal and Other Surgical Procedures, and Appendix III, 996-998.
 7. Coding disease causing absence
 - a. Any active chronic disease reported as the cause of a body part being removed or missing will be coded also, if the disease meets HIS definition of an active disease. (See Appendix I, Item D, for definition.)
 8. Assigning Etiology Code
 - a. See Section V, Item E, for list of etiology codes and priority order for assigning etiology.

- L. Paralysis
Complete
or
Partial
- See Appendix III, categories 343, 344, 348, 350-358,
430-438, 781.0 and 781.3
See Appendix I, categories X40-X64
See Short Index, Paralysis

1. Date of Onset

- a. Cerebral palsy (and synonyms) (X50), "hangs limp," and "drop" (paralytic) are coded as chronic, regardless of onset.
- b. Other paralysis, complete or partial, must be present 3 mos + in order to receive an X-code.
- c. For paralysis, -3 mos, complete or partial, see Short Index, Paralysis, -3 mos.

2. Problem Terminology

- a. Paralysis, complete or partial, waist down, lower body: code as for Paraplegia or Paraparesis.
- b. "Ataxia NEC," "spastic," "disturbance of coordination or gait": code as for Paralysis, partial.
- c. "Staggering," "stumbling": code as for Trouble, walking.
- d. "Dead nerve NOS," 3 mos +, due to polio or some other cause and not further qualified: code to X99 by etiology.
- e. "No use," "can't bend," "can't straighten up" or "can't sit up," in reference to back or limb(s): code as for Trouble of these sites. If 3 mos + and due to stroke, polio, or other disease of brain or spinal cord, code as for Paralysis, by site. If partial is mentioned or there is an indication that the person can move the part, code as for Paralysis, partial, by site.

- L. Paralysis
Complete
or
Partial
Continued
3. Paralysis, complete or partial, with other X-Codes
- a. Paralysis, complete or partial, with other X-codes in X70-X89 involving SAME body part, code Paralysis only, with one code for each body part mentioned; making use of multiple codes when possible. See Items B and C of this Section for assigning X-codes and priority order for X-codes.
- EXCEPTION: Spina bifida (X71), congenital dislocation of hip (X75), flatfoot (X77), and clubfoot (X78) will always be coded in addition to paralysis, if reported.
- b. Absence of a body part with paralysis of SAME body part will be coded as for Absence.
EXCEPTION: Any in X33 or X34 with paralysis of SAME body part will be coded to Paralysis only, NOT X33 or X34.
4. Paralysis, complete or partial, ill-defined sites
- a. If one arm and one leg are affected and there is no indication that they are on the same or opposite sides of the body, assume they are on the SAME side and code as for "one side of body." If both are completely paralyzed, code X41. If the arm is partially paralyzed and the leg is completely paralyzed, code X53 and X47. See also Item D for coding multiple impairments per person.
5. Coding disease causing paralysis
- a. Any active chronic disease reported as the cause of a body part being paralyzed, completely or partially, will be coded also, if the disease meets HIS definition of an active disease. (See Appendix I, Item D, for definition.)
6. Assigning Etiology Code
- a. See Section V, Item E, for list of etiology codes and priority order for assigning etiology.

M. Deformity
Limb, Back,
Trunk

See Appendix III, categories 709.2, 717, 723.5, 727, 728, 729, 734, 735, 736, 737, 738, 741, 744.5, 744.8 - 744.9, 754, 755, 756 and 781

See Appendix I, categories X70-X79 for terms other than Deformity which are included in X70-X79.

1. Date of Onset

- a. Any condition qualifying for X70-X79 will be treated as chronic regardless of onset and coded to X70-X79.

2. Terms and causes not coded as Deformity

- a. WRITTEN entries of "deformity," "atrophy," "withered" with cause of stroke, polio, or other paralytic disease of brain or spinal cord: code as for Paralysis, by body site.

EXCEPTION: Spina bifida (X71), congenital dislocation of hip (X75), flatfoot (X77), and clubfoot (X78) will always be coded as deformities. If paralysis is reported with these conditions, code both the deformity and the paralysis.

3. Coding X70-X79 in priority order

- a. Spina bifida (X71), congenital dislocation of hip (X75), flatfoot (X77) and clubfoot (X78) will always be coded as deformities. If absence or paralysis of the SAME body part is also reported, code absence or paralysis in addition to the deformity.
- b. Conditions qualifying for X70-X79, other than cases mentioned above, will be coded to body part deformed. One person may receive more than one code in this range. However, codes in this range should not be used for a body site which can be coded to more serious types of impairments in the range X20-X64, except when those types of deformities listed in (a) above are involved.
- c. Absence of the kind(s) in X33, X34, or X35 reported with a deformity of the SAME body part will be coded as for Deformity (X70-X79) only.

M. Deformity
Limb, Back,
Trunk
Continued

4. Coding disease causing Deformity
 - a. Any active chronic disease reported as the cause of a body part being deformed will be coded also, if the disease meets HIS definition of an active disease. (See Appendix I, Item D, for definition.)
5. Assigning Etiology Code
 - a. See Section V, Item E, for list of etiology codes and priority order for assigning etiology.

N. Non-Paralytic Orthopedic Impairment NEC

See Appendix III, categories 710-719, 720-724, 725-729, 738 and 781.9

See Appendix I, categories X80-X89 for Inclusions and Exclusions

See Short Index: Limp, Orthopedic Impairment, Pain, Stiffness, Swelling, Trouble, Walking difficulty and Weak.

1. Date of onset

a. Trick knee: Code X86 regardless of onset.

If due to a specified active disease, code disease only. NOTE: If the active disease causing the trick knee is also on a later Condition Page, merge the information on the two pages, since a diagnostic code can only be used once per person.

Example:

Condition Page 1 Person 03

3b. Trick Knee } Arthritis would be coded
3c. Arthritis }

Condition Page 4 Person 03

3b. Arthritis } Arthritis would be coded
3c. DK }

Merge the two pages and code only one Condition Page with diagnostic code for Arthritis.

b. All other conditions codable to X80-X89 must have an onset of 3 mos + .

2. Conditions codable to X80-X89 (3 mos +)

a. Limitation of motion NEC; stiffness; instability of joint; flail joint; ill-defined symptomatic conditions involving limbs, muscles, joints, back or trunk of unknown cause, due to injuries 3 mos + or old sprains, dislocations and sprains 3 mos + , will be coded to X80-X89, by body site. If a body part has been coded to any in X20-X79 and the SAME body part has an orthopedic impairment; prefer the code in X20-X79 over any in X80-X89 for the SAME body part.

Example: Paralysis, one side of body, caused by stroke. Pain in arm, caused by injury, 3 mos + , code X41.0 and code stroke also.

N. Non-Paralytic
Orthopedic
Impairment
NEC
Continued

2. Conditions codable to X80-X89 (3 mos +)--continued
 - b. Orthopedic Impairments mentioned on the preceding page due to or caused by specified conditions or disease will be coded to disease only. (Ignore active and inactive disease rule.)

Example: Conditions in X80-X89 caused by:

disc conditions: code disc condition
arthritis: code arthritis
bursitis: code bursitis
blood clot: code blood clot

- c. When one person has multiple orthopedic impairments in X80-X89, eliminate any body part which has been coded in X20-X79, then code remaining body parts to X80-X89, by site.

3. Conditions not codable to X80-X89 (3 mos +)

- a. Conditions in X80-X89 due to or caused by polio, stroke or other paralytic diseases of brain or spinal cord will be coded as for Paralysis, by site; if there is information that the person is bed-ridden, chairfast, or unable to move the part impaired, code as for Paralysis, complete, by site; if no such information is available, code as for Paralysis, partial in X51-X59. (Code the causative disease also, if the disease qualifies as an active chronic disease.) (See Appendix I, Item D, for definition of active disease.)

4. Assigning Etiology Code

- a. See Section V, Item E, for list of etiology codes and priority order for assigning etiology.

O. Impairment
NEC

See Appendix III

See Appendix I, categories X90-X99 for Inclusions and Exclusions

1. Date of onset

- a. Absence of teeth, acquired -3 mos: code 525.1; if due to injury -3 mos, code 873. Acquired absence of teeth, 3 mos +, will be coded to X92.
- b. "Brain damage" NEC, -3 mos: code 348.9; if due to injury -3 mos, code 854; if due to birth injury, code 767.0. "Brain damage" NEC, 3 mos +, with no residual specified will be coded to X99. If a residual is given, code the residual only, omitting X99.

2. Conditions codable to X90-X93

- a. Conditions in X90 and X92, involving teeth or jaw, with a speech impairment present, code the speech defect also.
- b. Cleft palate and harelip (X91.9); no additional code for speech defect will be coded.
- c. Deformity of skull (X93): If mental retardation is present, code the mental retardation also.

3. Conditions codable to X99

- a. X99 includes ill-defined impairments that cannot be coded to any other X-code. Entries such as deformed NOS, cripple NOS, without a body site specified; birth injury NOS, brain damage NOS (over 3 months of age) without specified type of injury or damage are coded to X99.
- b. Ill-defined after effects of tuberculosis, encephalitis, poliomyelitis, trachoma, toxoplasmosis, rickets, intracranial abscess, will be coded to X99 also. If a specified residual is given, code the residual only, omit X99. (See Appendix I, Item D.)
- c. Ill-defined after effects of stroke will be coded to stroke, NOT X99.

4. Assigning Etiology Code

- a. See Section V, Item E, for list of etiology codes and priority order for assigning etiology,

A. Injury General

1. The interviewer asks additional questions about accidents and injuries and records them in a space to be referred to as the Accident Section. In general a filled Accident Section will indicate that the condition is codable as an injury. Whether or not the Accident Section is complete the medical coder will apply all HIS rules and make use of all information, including footnotes, in order to judge whether the condition is actually to be coded as an injury.
2. See Appendix III, categories 800-999, for notes and instructions about injuries and their effects. Note that complications of medical and surgical procedures in 996-999 are counted with injuries, but they may have arisen through no fault of the doctor or surgeon.
3. For HIS, injuries are defined as any condition codable to ICD 800-999. They are divided into five groups as follows:
 - a. "Injury" (fracture, laceration, etc.) codable to 800-959.
 - b. For HIS effects of drugs have been split into two groups:
 - OVERDOSE or POISONING by drugs, ICD 960-979. They will be coded to 977.9
 - Adverse effects of drugs 995.2. Includes any effects of drugs, medicaments or biological substances without mention of "overdose" or "poisoning."
 - c. Toxic effects of venom and adverse effects of chemical substances, ICD 980-989. For HIS, code to 989.5 and 989.9
 - d. Other effects of external causes (frostbite, sunstroke, etc) ICD 990-995 (excluding 995.2).
 - e. Complications of surgical procedures or other medical care, ICD 996-999.
4. For HIS, injuries in groups a, d, and e above MUST result from a single episode of exposure. Continued exposure, for example, to loud noise or constant heavy lifting will be coded as if non-traumatic. Injuries in b and c, however, are coded regardless of length of exposure or number of episodes.

B. Date of Onset Injury conditions will be coded by onset according to when they were "first noticed", as shown on the Condition Page. This may affect the diagnostic code, and also whether to count as "acute" or "chronic." This will apply, regardless of when the original accident or event occurred, as shown in the Accident Section. For those conditions with onset (of the injury) 3 mos +, code from present effects of the injury. For those with onset -3 mos, code from kind of injury except as in rules given in Appendix III.

C. Multiple Injuries and Accidents

1. If a person reports more than one injury, ICD 800-999, as a result of a single accident, apply any HIS or ICD provisions for combining these multiples; otherwise, code each separately. See also Appendix III, categories 800-999, for references to multiples within various groupings.

2. Multiple accidents same person:

The general rule will be to count each separate accident a person may have, in terms of the condition(s) produced in each accident. However, when two separate accidents produce the same chronic condition or impairment, or add to the extent or severity of it, code only the latest state of this chronic condition or impairment, using the circumstances (how and where) of the latest accident report.

This section refers to: conditions of the newborn; deliveries (normal or complicated); abortions and other complications of pregnancy; and complications of the puerperium.

A. Infants

As previously, well newborn infants, or infants born dead, are not coded or counted by HIS. For instructions for coding illness conditions of infants, see Appendix III, categories 760-779 (Certain causes of perinatal morbidity).

If an infant stays in the hospital after the mother goes home (has more nights than mother in the hospital) and no reason is stated or indicated, the Hospital Stay will be coded as entered.

Routine circumcision, for infants whose hospital stays are to be coded, is not counted as an operation and is not coded; if this infant has some other operation during his stay, it will be coded, according to the general rules for coding operations, in Section VIII of this Manual.

B. Pregnancy

"Pregnancy" refers to the period of gestation before abortion or delivery. See Appendix III, categories 630-676 for notes applicable to complications of pregnancy. See also the Short Index and Vol. 2 under "Pregnancy".

C. Abortion

Abortion is coded as per ICD, Vol. 1, categories 634-639. It includes any interruption of pregnancy before 28 weeks gestation with a dead fetus. See Appendix III, categories 630-676 for notes applicable to abortion. See also Vol. 2 under "Abortion." "Miscarriage" will be coded as for Abortion, spontaneous (634.-).

If the Hospital Page says that an operation such as "D and C", or some other, was done to induce the abortions, or to treat a spontaneous abortion, the operation will be coded as reported, according to the general rules in Section VIII.

D. Deliveries

1. See Appendix III, categories 630-676 for notes applicable to delivery. See also the Short Index and Col. 2 under "Delivery."
2. All hospitalized deliveries--on the Hospital Page--will be regarded as having been treated surgically even though the person may say no operation was done. For HIS, "Delivery NOS" will be coded to 75 (Other Obstetrical Operations).
3. If the mother has some other operation after delivery while still in the hospital--such as "tubes tied" (66)--code it in addition to the delivery code.

E. Puerperal Complications

The "puerperium" refers to the 2-month period (approximately) following a delivery or abortion. Complications arising during this period are classified in 642, 646-648, or in 660-676. See Appendix III, categories 630-676, for notes applicable to puerperal complications. See also Short Index, and Vol. 2, under "Puerperal."

F. 1-Digit Supplementary Code

Use "2" (acute) for the 1-digit supplementary code for all conditions on the Condition Pages which are codable to 630-676. Conditions complicating a current pregnancy are coded as acute even though they may have started in the earlier months of this pregnancy. Conditions due to previous pregnancies are not coded to the numbers 630-676, but to the numbers for the conditions indicated. For example: varicose veins "due to pregnancy", in a woman who is not pregnant now, and is not in the puerperal stage, is coded to 454.9 and as "1" (chronic). See also Section III, Item M, for "pregnancy with hypertension and other toxemias."

- A. General For conditions related to childbearing, see Section VII of this Manual. Section VIII deals with general instructions for operation codes to be used in coding the Hospital Page.
- B. Codable Admissions
1. For HIS, codable hospital admissions or stays must be:
 - a. Within the time reference period (limits of which are defined elsewhere), AND
 - b. For overnight or longer.
- C. Coding Operations
- See Appendix II, Classification of Operations and Non-Operative Procedures for HIS, and the Index of Operations and Non-Operative Procedures for HIS. For multiple operations per person, see Item D, below.
1. For HIS, operations include not only incision (cutting into), excision (cutting out), but the setting of bones, the introduction of tubes for drainage, "tapping" (drawing off fluid), terms ending in "—scopy" (procedures for internal viewing and treatment) and others which the person and the coder may not think of as operations. These will be coded as operations or surgical procedures even though the person says "no operation was performed."
 2. Operations for fractures and dislocations of bones and joints: see Appendix II, categories 76-79.
 - a. If the diagnosis shows "rib" as the site, do not code as if treated surgically unless the report states than an operation was done.
 - b. If the diagnosis gives any site except rib, assume that surgery was done, and code as if surgically treated.
 3. Other kinds of operations and procedures: consult ICD 9-CMS and/or Appendix II; code as reported. If in doubt whether a procedure should be coded as an operation, consult the supervisor.
- D. Multiple Operations Per Person
- Multiple Operations, per person
- a. Code each operation up to three. If more than three given, code first three. Implied operations will be coded after listed operations have been coded.

APPENDIX I
X-CODE FOR SPECIAL IMPAIRMENTS (X00-X99)
BY TYPE, SITE AND ETIOLOGY

U. S. DEPARTMENT OF HEALTH AND HUMAN SERVICES
Public Health Service
National Center for Health Statistics
Division of Health Interview Statistics

A. History and development of the X-Code

The X-Code for Special Impairments, by Type, Site and Etiology, was developed in 1955-1956 by the, at that time, Division of Public Health Methods of the Public Health Service. It had been tried and found useful in coding and tabulating various kinds of defects and deformities as reported in household health surveys, and in certain other studies of handicapping conditions, requiring relatively simple detail for statistical presentation. It provided a plan by which all three elements of type, site, and etiology (cause) could be expressed by means of a single diagnostic code, and it brought together similar types of defects by type and site; etiology was supplied by adding an additional 1-digit code to the code for the type and site. HIS elected to use this plan for impairments, using the ICD revision in effect at that time for coding all other conditions.

HIS has continued to use this X-Code, making some changes in it since the beginning of the Survey, and will use it instead of the present ICD for the coding of impairments.

Appendix I, which contains the X-Code and explains it, has been rewritten as of January 2, 1979 but the principles and methods are similar to what they were before that time. For the lists of etiological codes, and the full classification of impairments by type, see E and F of this Appendix.

In developing the X-code it had been necessary to make a selection of conditions to be called "impairments." The term "impairment" has no actual definitive medical significance. Cardiac, mental, or arthritic patients are "impaired" as well as amputees, the blind, the deaf. However, defects of the heart, lungs, other internal or respiratory organs are in general excluded from the X-Code except when these sites are involved in paralysis, absence of part, or postoperatively in the formation of an artificial opening to the surface. Chronic progressive disease processes of all systems are excluded (to be coded as per ICD), but the line between what is a "chronic disease" and what is an "impairment" is, in some areas, admittedly thin. For example: speech defects, mental retardation, cerebral palsy are included in the X-Code, but epilepsy, multiple sclerosis, Parkinson's disease, and personality defects are to be coded as chronic diseases in terms of ICD codes.

B. General Characteristics of Special Impairments

1. Special impairments (to be referred to hereinafter as impairments) are often late effects of past and inactive pathological processes. (See also Item D, following, for discussion of "late effects.") But they may sometimes coexist with and be due to a currently active progressive chronic disease such as diabetes, arteriosclerosis, cancer.
2. Impairments are often, but by no means necessarily, permanent, and some are relatively minor in nature. Many respond to corrective therapy, medical or surgical. However, they must be chronic or long-continuing or of chronic type in order to be coded to the X-Code. For rules for coding impairments in relation to date of onset, see specific instructions set forth elsewhere in the HIS Medical Coding Manual.

B. General Characteristics of Special Impairments--continued

3. They represent decrease or loss of ability to perform such functions as seeing, hearing, tasting, smelling, other sense perception, speaking, understanding, reading, writing, use of symbols, locomotion, lifting, or manipulation of body or extremities or making a presentable appearance.

4. They are, in summary, for the most part functional or structural musculoskeletal and neuromuscular abnormalities or defects, and defects of special senses, speech, intelligence.

C. ICD Codes for Impairments

All conditions in the X-Code can be found somewhere in ICD, Vols. 1 or 2.

As a matter of interest to classifiers, ICD codes for impairments are discussed here, although they are, of course, not used when the X-Code is used.

For certain impairments the ICD code is specific for a particular kind of impairment, while for others it may be one that includes also: (1) conditions that are not classed as impairments or (2) more than one type of impairment. Strict comparability, therefore, code by code, between the X-Code and ICD for all types of impairments is not possible. However, listed below, in ICD numerical order, Vol. 1, are those ICD categories which are used exclusively for impairments with the X-Code numbers to be used instead, at the right. These ICD numbers are not used by HIS--as shown also in Appendix III.

It should be noted that ICD categories in the list below with numbers in the 740-759 series include impairments specified or known to be congenital in origin; categories with "8" in the first digit are traumatic in origin. Whereas, to all impairments in X00-X99 the coder must add the appropriate etiological code, the etiological code is not shown in the following listing with any of the X-Code numbers.

ICD CODE NUMBER(S)	NAME OF IMPAIRMENT	X-CODE NUMBER(S)
317-319	Mental Retardation (various degrees)	X19
342	Hemiplegia	X41
343	Infantile cerebral palsy	X50
	Other paralytic syndromes	
344.0	Quadriplegia	X40-X49,
344.2	Diplegia of upper limbs	X50-X59
344.3	Monoplegia of lower limbs	X60-X63
344.4	Monoplegia of upper limbs	by site
344.5	Unspecified monoplegia	and extent
344.6	Cauda equina syndrome	
344.8	Other	
344.9	Unspecified	
369	Blindness and low vision	X00-X03
389	Deafness Deaf mutism	X05-X09 X05
520.0	Anodontia	X92
520.1	Supernumerary teeth	X92
520.2	Abnormalities of size and form	X92
520.5	Hereditary disturbances, tooth structure	X92
521.6	Ankylosis, teeth	X92
524	Dentofacial anomalies, including malocclusion	X92
718.6	Unspecified Protrusio Acetabuli	X75
728.4	Laxity of ligament	X80-X89, by site
728.6	Contracture of palmar fascia	X74
734	Flatfoot	X77
735	Acquired deformities of toe	X76
736	Other acquired deformities of limbs	X73-X76, by site
737	Curvature of spine	X70

APPENDIX I. X-CODE FOR SPECIAL IMPAIRMENTS

ICD CODE NUMBER(S)	NAME OF IMPAIRMENT	X-CODE NUMBER(S)
738	Other acquired deformities	
738.0	Acquired deformity of nose	X90
738.1	Other acquired deformity of head	X93
738.2	Acquired deformity of neck	X79
738.3	Acquired deformity of chest and rib	X79
738.4	Acquired spondylolisthesis	X70
738.5	Other acquired deformity of back and spine	X70
738.6	Acquired deformity of pelvis	X75
738.7	Cauliflower ear	X90
738.8	Acquired deformity of other specified site	X70-X79, X90, X92 X93 by site
738.9	Acquired deformity of unspecified site	X99
741	Spina bifida (congenital)	X71
742.0	Encephalocele	X93
742.1	Microcephalus	X93
742.3	Congenital hydrocephalus	X93
743.0	Anophthalmos, one or both eyes	X00,X02,X03
743.1	Microphthalmos, NEC	X01
744.0	Anomalies of ear, causing hearing impairment	X05-X09
744.1	Accessory auricle	X90
744.2	Other specified anomalies of ear	X90
744.3	Unspecified anomalies of ear	X90
744.5	Webbing of neck	X79
744.8	Other specified anomalies of: face (disfiguring) NEC neck NEC	X90 X79
744.9	Unspecified anomalies of: face NEC neck NEC	X90 X79
749	Cleft palate and cleft lip	X91
750.0	Tongue tie	X11
750.1	Other anomalies of tongue (with speech defect)	X11
753.0	Renal agenesis and dysgenesis	X31

ICD CODE NUMBER(S)	NAME OF IMPAIRMENT	X-CODE NUMBER(S)
	Congenital musculoskeletal deformities:	
754.2	spine	X70
754.3	dislocation of hip	X75
754.4	bowleg(s), deformity leg(s)	X76
754.5	varus deformities of feet	X76
754.6	valgus deformities of feet: flatfoot	X76 X77
754.7	other deformities of feet: clubfoot NOS	X76 X78
754.8	other specified deformities: chest wall	X79
	dislocation of elbow	X73
	chest, funnel chest	X79
	clubhand, hand	X74
	lower limb joints	X76
755	Other congenital anomalies of limbs: absence	X20-X29,X35, by site
	deformity	X70-X79, by site
756.0	Anomalies of skull and face bones: face	X90
	skull, NEC	X93
756.1	Anomalies of spine: absence of specified segment of spine	X33
	other deformity of spine	X70
756.2	Cervical rib	X79
756.3	Other anomalies of rib and sternum: absence of rib, sternum	X33
	other deformity of rib and sternum	X79
758.0	Down's syndrome	X19
759.7}	Multiple congenital anomalies, type and	
759.9}	site not specified	X99
781.5	Clubbing of fingers	X74
	Traumatic amputation of:	
885	thumb(s)	X22,X25
886	other finger(s)	X22,X25
887	arm(s) and hand(s)	X20,X24
895	toe(s)	X27,X29
896	feet, foot	X27,X29
897	leg, one or both	X26,X28

APPENDIX I. X-CODE FOR SPECIAL IMPAIRMENTS

ICD CODE NUMBER(S)	NAME OF IMPAIRMENT	X-CODE NUMBER(S)
905.6	Late effect of dislocation	X80-X89
905.7	Late effect of sprain and strain	X80-X89
905.8	Late effect of tendon injury	X80-X89
905.9	Late effect of traumatic amputation	X20-X29, X35

D. Late Effects of Diseases, Injuries, and Poisonings

A "late effect" is regarded generally as any abnormal condition resulting from a pathological process after this causative process has become inactive or healed. A late effect may consist of an impairment as defined, or it could be any other abnormal condition. For HIS, an impairment may be a late effect as defined above, but it could be due to some active pathological process. By means of the X-Code, impairments can be collected whether the cause is present or not. Instructions for coding impairments in relation to active diseases causing them are set forth elsewhere in the HIS Medical Coding Manual.

For facts about the HIS method of coding late effects of injury or poisoning, see notes for categories 800-999, in Appendix III.

ICD has a few categories specific for late effects of certain diseases--with "late effects" in the title.

Following are the ICD codes for late effects of diseases, which are not used by HIS for any purpose--as shown also in Appendix III:

- 137 Late effects of tuberculosis
- 138 Late effects of acute poliomyelitis
- 139 Late effects of other infectious and parasitic diseases
- 268.1 Late effects of rickets
- 326 Late effects of intracranial abscess or pyogenic infection
- 438 Late effects of cerebrovascular disease

Since the above ICD late effects codes for diseases are not used by HIS, the method for coding late effects is as follows:

1. When the late effect is a specified impairment, the appropriate X-Code is selected and the appropriate etiological code is added; for example, "Blindness, both eyes, due to old trachoma" is coded by HIS to X00.8, only.
2. When the late effect is specified but it is not an impairment, the condition is coded to the ICD code for the condition, but never to the above-mentioned ICD late effects codes; for example, "Personality disorder due to old encephalitis" is coded by HIS to 301.9 only.
3. If the past disease is known, but the present difficulty is ill-defined or not specified, the above ICD late effects codes will not be used. Instead, if the past disease is one indicated in these late effects codes, or is an old birth injury, or "Brain damage NEC," X99 (with the appropriate etiological code) will be used. Thus, for example, "Post-polio" would be coded to X99.4. However, for "After effects of stroke," the stroke only will be coded.

D. Late Effects of Diseases, Injuries, and Poisonings--continued**Coding Late Effects, other than those on the preceding page, and the original disease**

1. ICD does not have late effect codes for diseases other than the ones mentioned on preceding page. However, HIS coding requires that late effects of many diseases be coded; which is usually a special impairment. When the disease causing the late effect or special impairment is given, the question arises as to when to code the causative disease also. HIS has devised a definition for an active disease and an inactive disease, as described below. When a causative disease meets HIS' definition of "active" disease, the disease will be coded in addition to any special impairment.

Inactive disease processes will be used to determine etiology and will not be coded as a separate diagnosis.

The terms "active" and "inactive" (i.e., past disease or condition) are distinguished by considering ALL of the Condition Pages for each person.

The CAUSE is "Active" if:

1. it is reported in Item 1 or 3b of a Condition Page AND NO explicit indication that the condition is cured or no longer present. "Explicit indication" would include: (1) Questions 10-12 completed and "cured" is checked in Item 12b; (2) the person says the condition is cured, corrected, arrested, no longer present, or the equivalent; (3) the name of the condition indicates it is no longer present ("childhood rheumatic fever" and the person is an adult)
2. it is reported in Item 3c or 3e, and the condition is on the list of conditions which are coded as chronic regardless of onset, and there is no explicit indication (as defined in #1 above) that the condition is cured, corrected, arrested or no longer present.
3. it is stated in the footnotes or written entries of the Condition Page(s) for this person that the disease causing the impairment is still present.

The CAUSE is "Inactive" if:

1. it is reported in Item 1 or 3b of a Condition Page AND there are explicit indications (as defined in #1 above) that the condition is cured, corrected, arrested or no longer present
2. it is reported in Item 3c or 3e, AND either the condition is NOT on the list of conditions which are coded as chronic regardless of onset, or, if it is on the list, there is explicit indication (as defined in #1 above) that the condition is cured or no longer present
3. there is no footnote or written entry on the Condition Pages for this person stating that the condition causing the impairment is still present.

E. List of Etiology Codes

Note: For complete instructions for coding impairments by etiology, see HIS Medical Coding Manual.

These codes are listed in the order of priority in which they should be assigned when more than one etiology is given, none of them is an accident or injury, and it cannot be determined which was the earlier cause of the impairment. Where the earlier cause can be determined, that fourth digit is always assigned regardless of the priority shown below. Accident or injury ALWAYS has priority whether it occurred earlier or later than other causes.

- .0 Accident or injury except at birth
- .1 Cerebrovascular disease (stroke)
(with arteriosclerosis) (with hypertension)
- .2 Neoplasm
- .3 Diabetes (with cataract or glaucoma)
- .4 Poliomyelitis
- .5 Cataract with glaucoma
- .6 Cataract without glaucoma
- .7 Glaucoma without cataract
- .8 Other eye disease (as in ICD)
(any infection of eye)
- .9 Congenital origin NEC or birth injury
- .X Other conditions not in .0-.9
(non-congenital) (non-traumatic)
(hereditary) (old age) ("age" NOS)
- .Y Unknown or unspecified origin

F. Classification of Impairments, by Type and Site (X00-X99)

Note: For complete instructions for coding all types of impairments and their causes, see HIS Medical Coding Manual, Section V.

X00-X03 BLINDNESS AND IMPAIRMENT OF VISION (Only one code in this range may be used per person)

X00 Blind in both eyes

X01 Visual Impairment in both eyes

X02 Blind in one eye, visually impaired in the other eye

X03 Blind or visually impaired in one eye only: other eye, good vision or not mentioned

X05-X09 DEAFNESS AND IMPAIRMENT OF HEARING (Only one code in this range may be used per person.)

X05 Deafness, both ears

Includes persons who are reported "deaf" in both ears, or reported to have no useful hearing in both ears, or can't hear, both ears. Excludes terms such as "a little deaf," "partially deaf"; code as for hearing impairment.

X06 Other hearing impairment involving both ears

Any bilateral hearing impairment which cannot be coded to X05.

X07 Deafness or hearing impairment of any degree involving only one ear

X08 Deafness, NOS

Includes "deafness," "deaf," "can't hear," unknown whether one or both ears are involved. Excludes such terms as "a little deaf," "partially deaf"; code as for hearing impairment.

X09 Impaired hearing, NOS

Hearing impairment unknown whether one or both ears are involved.

F. Continued

X10-X19 IMPAIRMENT OF SPEECH, SPECIAL SENSE AND INTELLIGENCE

X10-X11 IMPAIRMENT OF SPEECH (Only one code in this range may be used per person.)

X10 Stammering and Stuttering

X11 Other speech defects

Includes persons with absence of larynx or tongue even when speech defect is not reported.

X12 IMPAIRMENT OF SPECIAL SENSE, EXCEPT VISION OR HEARING

X12 Loss or impairment of sensation

Includes taste, smell and loss or disturbances of sensation (burning) and numbness of any body parts. This code will NOT be used if a code in the range of X40-X99 has been assigned.

X14 SPECIAL LEARNING DISABILITY

(Prefer X19 if both X14 and X19 are present per person)

X14 Special learning disability (reading) (mathematics) ("mirror writing or reading".) Does not include learning disability resulting only from deficiency in intelligence.

X19 MENTAL RETARDATION

X19 Mental retardation: Any degree or any type, including "mongolism." ("Down's (Downes) Syndrome")

F. Continued**X20-X35 ABSENCE, LOSS, EXTREMITIES, AND CERTAIN OTHER SITES****X20-X25 ABSENCE, LOSS, UPPER EXTREMITY**

X20 Arms, both

X21 Hands, both

X22 One or more fingers (excludes tip only-below first joint (thumb(s)) of both hands

X23 Arm, one
Person may also have X24 or X25

X24 Hand, one
Person may also have X23 or X25

X25 One or more fingers, (excludes tip only-below first joint), thumb, of only one hand.
Person may also have X23 or X24

Code only one of these codes per person, and no other code in the range of X20-X25.

X26-X29 ABSENCE, LOSS, LOWER EXTREMITY

X26 Legs, both

X27 Feet or toes (excludes tip only-below first joint) only, both

Code only one of these codes per person, and no other code in the range of X26-X29.

X28 Leg, one
Person may also have X29

X29 Foot or toes (excludes tip only-below first joint) only, one
Person may also have X28

F. Continued

- X30-X35 **ABSENCE, LOSS, CERTAIN OTHER SITES**
- X30 Lung
- X31 Kidney
- X32 Breast
- X33 Rib, bone, joint, or muscle of trunk, one or more
- X34 Bone, joint, or muscle of extremity (including hip) without loss of extremity, one or more.
- X35 Tips of fingers or toes (below first joint) only
-
- X40-X64 **PARALYSIS, COMPLETE OR PARTIAL**
- X40-X49 **PARALYSIS NOS (COMPLETE) OF EXTREMITIES**
- X40 Entire body or four limbs (Prohibits X41-X62)
- X41 One side of body only, including limbs; or "hemiplegia." (Prohibits X42, X44, X46, or X48)
- X42 Arms, both (Prohibits X43-X45)
- X43 Arm, one (Prohibits X44)
(When the corresponding body part on the other side has been coded, "one" means "other.")
- X44 Hands, both, and/or finger(s) (thumb) on one or both hands, only. (Prohibits X45)
- X45 Hand, one, and/or finger(s) (thumb) on one hand, only.
(When the corresponding body part on the other side has been coded, "one" means "other.")
- X46 Legs, both; or "paraplegia." (Prohibits X47-X49)
- X47 Leg, one (Prohibits X48)
(When the corresponding body part on the other side has been coded, "one" means "other.")
- X48 Feet, both, and/or toe(s) on one or both feet, only.
(Prohibits X49)
- X49 Foot, one, and/or toe(s) on one foot, only.
(When the corresponding body part on the other side has been coded, "one" means "other.")

F. Continued

X40-X64	<u>PARALYSIS, COMPLETE OR PARTIAL---CONTINUED</u>
X50-X59	<u>CEREBRAL PALSY AND PARALYSIS PARTIAL OF EXTREMITIES</u>
X50	Cerebral palsy (and synonyms) <u>Includes "spastic"</u> if present since birth (congenital) (Prohibits X51-X64)
X51	One side of body only, including limbs; or "hemiparesis." (Prohibits X52, X54, X56, OR X58)
X52	Arms, both (Prohibits X53-X55)
X53	Arm, one (Prohibits X54) (When the corresponding body part on the other side has been coded, "one" means "other.")
X54	Hands, both, and/or finger(s) (thumb) on one or both hands only. (Prohibits X55)
X55	Hand, one, and/or fingers(s) (thumb) on one hand only. (When the corresponding body part on the other side has been coded, "one" means "other.")
X56	Legs, both; or "paraparesis," (Prohibits X57-X59)
X57	Leg, one (Prohibits X58) (When the corresponding body part on the other side has been coded, "one" means "other.")
X58	Feet, both, and/or toe(s) on one or both feet, only (Prohibits X59)
X59	Foot, one, and/or toe(s) on one foot, only (When the corresponding body part on the other side has been coded, "one" means "other.")
X60-X64	<u>PARALYSIS, COMPLETE OR PARTIAL, SITES EXCEPT EXTREMITIES</u>
X60	Trunk, any part except parts included in X40, X41 or X51 If PARTIAL paralysis of ENTIRE body is indicated, code X60 only.
X61	Face (Bell's palsy or paralysis)
X62	Bladder or anal sphincter
X63	Paralysis, complete or partial, sites NOT of extremities, trunk, nor affecting special senses or speech
X64	Paralysis, complete or partial, NEC

F. Continued

X70-X79 SPECIFIED DEFORMITY OF LIMBS, TRUNK, BACK

Includes: specified structural deformities of limbs, trunk, back, described as: contracture; atrophy; accessory ("extra"); short or shortness; crippled; shrivelled; "drawn up"; "twisted"; "withered"; and scarring (with contracture) involving limbs, neck, back, trunk.

X70 Curvature and other structural deformities of spine or back, except as in X71.9

Includes: all structural deformities of spine or back except spina bifida (X71.9).

PROHIBITS: chronic back conditions NEC in X80

X71.9 Spina bifida (with meningocele) (always congenital)

Prohibits: X80

X73 Deformity of shoulder or upper extremity

Excludes: deformity of hand(s), finger(s), thumb(s), only

(Prohibits X74)

X74 Deformity of hand(s), finger(s), thumb(s), only

X75 Dislocation, congenital, and other deformity hip and/or pelvis

X76 Deformity of any site on lower extremity, one or both

Includes: genu valgum (knock knee); genu varum (bowleg); tibial torsion; hammer toe; hallux valgus or varus; any deformity of toe; deformity leg NOS, foot NEC, knee.

Excludes X77 and X78

X77 Flatfoot (including weak or fallen arches and other difficulty with arches)

X78 Clubfoot (congenital)

X79 Deformity, neck, trunk bones, NEC

Includes: pigeon breast; cervical rib; postural defect NEC

F. Continued

X80-X89 **NON-PARALYTIC ORTHOPEDIC IMPAIRMENT (CHRONIC) NEC**

Excludes: "disc conditions" (ICD 722)

Includes: Limitation of motion NEC; stiffness (complete or partial); "flail joint"; instability of joint; symptomatic, but chronic difficulty, weakness, "trouble", pain, swelling, "limping", involving muscles, joints, limbs, back or trunk, of unknown cause, or due to healed injuries 3 mos + or to past and now inactive diseases; old (3 mos +) sprains, strains, or dislocations with effect not elsewhere classifiable, or not stated.

NOTE: Orthopedic impairment NEC, as in X80-X89, is not to be coded as a separate diagnosis if due to specified disease; code disease only.

ORTHOPEDIC IMPAIRMENT NEC (CHRONIC) INVOLVING:

X80 Back, any part

Includes: neck

X84 Shoulder(s) and/or upper extremity(ies)

X85 Hip and/or pelvis

Excludes: congenital dislocation of hip (X75.9)

X86 Lower extremity

Excludes: impairments involving arches of foot, feet (X77)

X89 Other and ill-defined sites

Includes: rib; trunk, NOS; "side," NOS; joint, NOS; limping; staggering; stumbling; trouble in walking, NOS

Excludes: jaw (X92); and ataxic gait, which if chronic, is coded as for Paralysis, partial.

F. Continued

X90-X99 DEFECT, ABNORMALITY, SPECIAL IMPAIRMENT, NEC

- X90 Disfigurement, scarring, face, nose, lips, ears
Includes: absence of nose, lips, ears; accessory auricle; other abnormality NEC of face, nose, ears, mouth, teeth, jaws if stated to be disfiguring.
If speech defect is present, code it also.
Excludes: cleft palate and harelip whether or not disfiguring (X91.9)
- X91.9 Cleft palate and harelip (with speech defect) (disfiguring)
Includes: cleft palate and cleft lip (as in ICD 749) with or without speech defect and whether or not stated to be disfiguring.
- X92 Other dentofacial handicap
Includes: acquired absence of teeth, onset 3 mos + ; and abnormalities of teeth, malocclusion, and other jaw and dentofacial anomalies as in ICD 520.0, 520.1, 520.2, 520.5, 521.6, and 524. If speech defect is present, code it also.
Excludes: cleft palate and harelip (X91.9); and other dentofacial handicaps if stated to be disfiguring (X90).
- X93 Deformity of skull (hydrocephaly) (microcephaly)
If mental retardation is present, code it also.
- X94 Artificial orifice (opening) or valve (surgical) any site (colostomy)
- X99 Special impairment, ill-defined
Includes: deformed NOS; cripple NOS; "birth injury" or "brain damage" NOS, at ages 3 months or over without specification as to type of impairment; ill-defined "after effects" of tuberculosis, encephalitis, poliomyelitis, trachoma, toxoplasmosis, other infective and parasitic diseases, rickets, intracranial abscess. See also Item D, this Appendix.
Excludes: stroke, or ill-defined "after effects" of stroke; code the stroke---not X99.

ICD9-CM3 contains a detailed classification and an index of surgical operations and other therapeutic and diagnostic procedures, constructed to be useful within hospitals for hospital record-keeping.

The Health Interview Survey uses only the first two digits of this classification. HIS recognizes that the detail about the specific type of operation is lost. It is felt that, for HIS, the body system or region (on which the operation was performed) will be sufficient for data analyses.

As does ICD9-CM3, HIS recognizes 16 broad groups, each of which is subdivided into several 2-digit categories. These subdivisions describe operations within a system in one or more of the following ways:

- a. a specified operation with the part of body specified or implied, as in "excision of larynx" (30).
- b. operations without reference to procedures, for some conditions which are commonly surgical conditions, as in "operations for appendix" (47).
- c. operations, except as in a or b above (without reference to procedure or condition) on a specified part of body, as in "operations on esophagus" (42).

Additionally, HIS has a single code category "00" for any operation of ill-defined or unknown type, with site unspecified.

For the alphabetical arrangement of operations, or to determine the "broad" category for inclusion of a specific operation or procedure, see Index of Operations and Non-Operative Procedures (this Manual) or refer to ICD9-CM3. The ICD9-CM3 index can also be used for the classification of operations and procedures. Remember, however, that HIS only uses the first two digits.

1. OPERATION, TYPE UNKNOWN, SITE UNKNOWN

00 Operation, no site or type

Includes: operation NEC on gland NOS, or "side," or other very ill-defined site.
Use 00 when it is known that an operation was performed, but there is no information about the kind of operation or about the body system or part involved.

2. OPERATIONS ON THE NERVOUS SYSTEM (01-05)

- 01 Incision and excision of skull, brain, and cerebral meninges
- 02 Other operations on skull, brain, and cerebral meninges
- 03 Operations on spinal cord and spinal canal structures
- 04 Operations on cranial and peripheral nerves
- 05 Operations on sympathetic nerves or ganglia

3. OPERATIONS ON THE ENDOCRINE SYSTEM (06-07)

- 06 Operations on thyroid and parathyroid glands
- 07 Operations on other endocrine glands

4. OPERATIONS ON THE EYE (08-16)

- 08 Operations on eyelids
- 09 Operations on lacrimal system (tear ducts)
- 10 Operations on conjunctiva
- 11 Operations on cornea
- 12 Operations on iris, ciliary body, sclera, and anterior chamber
- 13 Operations on lens
- 14 Operations on retina, choroid, vitreous, and posterior chamber
- 15 Operations on extraocular muscles
- 16 Operations on orbit and eyeball

5. **OPERATIONS ON THE EAR (18-20)**

- 18 Operations on external ear
- 19 Reconstructive operations on middle ear
- 20 Other operations on middle and inner ear

6. **OPERATIONS ON THE NOSE, MOUTH AND PHARYNX (21-29)**

- 21 Operations on the nose
 - Includes: operations on bone and skin of nose
- 22 Operations on nasal sinuses
- 23 Removal and restoration of teeth
- 24 Other operations on teeth, gums and alveoli
- 25 Operations on tongue
- 26 Operations on salivary glands and ducts
- 27 Other operations on mouth and face
 - Includes: operations on lips, palate and soft tissue of face and mouth, except tongue and gingiva.
- 28 Operations on tonsils and adenoids
- 29 Operations on pharynx

7. **OPERATIONS ON THE RESPIRATORY SYSTEM (30-34)**

- 30 Excision of larynx
- 31 Other operations on larynx and trachea
- 32 Excision of lung and bronchus
- 33 Other operations on lung and bronchus
- 34 Operations on chest wall, pleura, mediastinum and diaphragm

8. OPERATIONS ON THE CARDIOVASCULAR SYSTEM (35-39)

- 35 Operations on valves and septa of heart
- 36 Operations on vessels of heart
- 37 Other operations on heart and pericardium
- 38 Incision, excision and occlusion of vessels
- 39 Other operations on vessels

9. OPERATIONS ON THE HEMIC AND LYMPHATIC SYSTEM (40-41)

- 40 Operations on lymphatic system
- 41 Operations on bone marrow and spleen

10. OPERATIONS ON THE DIGESTIVE SYSTEM (42-54)

- 42 Operations on the esophagus
- 43 Incision and excision of stomach
- 44 Other operations on stomach
- 45 Incision, excision, and anastomosis of intestine
- 46 Other operations on intestine
- 47 Operations on appendix
- 48 Operations on rectum and perirectal tissue
- 49 Operations on anus
- 50 Operations on liver
- 51 Operations on gallbladder and biliary tract
 - Includes: operations on common bile duct, cystic duct and hepatic duct
- 52 Operations on pancreas
- 53 Repair of hernia
- 54 Other operations on abdominal region
 - Includes: operations on epigastric region, flank, groin region, inguinal region, loin region, male pelvic cavity, mesentery, omentum, peritoneum and retroperitoneal tissue space.

**APPENDIX II. CLASSIFICATION OF OPERATIONS AND
NON-OPERATIVE PROCEDURES, FOR HIS**

11. OPERATIONS ON THE URINARY SYSTEM (55-59)

- 55 Operations on kidney
Includes: operations on renal pelvis
- 56 Operations on ureter
- 57 Operations on urinary bladder
- 58 Operations on urethra
- 59 Other operations on urinary tract

12. OPERATIONS ON MALE GENITAL ORGANS (60-64)

- 60 Operations on prostate and seminal vesicles
- 61 Operations on scrotum and tunica vaginalis
- 62 Operations on testes
- 63 Operations on spermatic cord, epididymis, and vas deferens
- 64 Operations on penis

13. OPERATIONS ON THE FEMALE GENITAL ORGANS (65-71)

- 65 Operations on ovary
- 66 Operations on fallopian tubes
- 67 Operations on cervix
- 68 Other incision and excision of uterus
- 69 Other operations on uterus and supporting structures
- 70 Operations on vagina and cul-de-sac
- 71 Operations on vulva and perineum

14. OBSTETRICAL PROCEDURES (72-75)

- 72 Forceps, vacuum, and breech delivery
- 73 Other procedures inducing or assisting delivery
Includes: spontaneous delivery with manual assistance.
- 74 Caesarean section and removal of fetus
- 75 Other obstetric operations
For HIS, includes also "normal delivery"

15. OPERATIONS ON THE MUSCULOSKELETAL SYSTEM (76-84)

76 Operations on facial bones and joints

Excludes: accessory sinuses (22); nasal bones (21); and skull (01) (02).

77 Incision, excision and division of other bones

Excludes: operations on facial bones (76); joint structures (80-81); nasal bones (21); and skull (01-02)

78 Other operations on bones, except facial bones

Excludes: operations on joint structures (80-81); nasal bones (21); and skull (01-02).

79 Reduction of fracture and dislocation

Includes: application of cast or splint; reduction with insertion of traction device.

Excludes: external fixation alone for immobilization of fracture (93); internal fixation without reduction of fracture (78); operations on facial bones (76); nasal bones (21); orbit (76); skull (02); vertebrae (03); removal of cast or splint (97); replacement of cast or splint (97); and traction alone for reduction of fracture (93).

80 Incision and excision of joint structures

Includes: operations on capsule of joint; cartilage; condyle; ligament; meniscus; and synovial membrane.

Excludes: cartilage of ear (18); nose (21); and joints of face (76).

81 Repair and plastic operations on joint structures

Includes: operations on ankle; knee; shoulder; elbow; wrist; hip; vertebrae; fingers; and toes not codable elsewhere and when condition is not specified and tissue (such as skin, bone, etc.) is not apparent.

82 Operations on muscle, tendon and fascia of hand

Includes: operations on synovial membrane and tendon sheath.

83 Operations on muscle, tendon, fascia and bursa, except hand

Includes: operations on synovial membrane and tendon sheaths.

Excludes: hand (82); diaphragm (34); and muscles of eye (15).

84 Other procedures on musculoskeletal system

16. OPERATIONS ON THE INTEGUMENTARY SYSTEM (85-86)

85 Operations on the breast

Includes: operations on skin of breast and previous mastectomy site (female or male).

86 Operations on skin and subcutaneous tissue

Includes: operations on hair follicles; male perineum; nails; sebaceous glands, subcutaneous fat pads; and superficial fossae.

Includes also: operations on regions such as arm; armpit; back; cheek; buttock; chin; feet; forearm; forehead; hand; head; heel; leg; neck; scalp; temple; temporal region; and thigh when specific tissue (such as bone; cartilage; joint; etc.) involved is not mentioned.

Excludes: those on skin of anus (49); breast (85); ear (18); eyebrow (08); eyelid (08); female perineum (71); lips (27); nose (21); penis (64); scrotum (61); and vulva (71).

Excludes also: operations on the head when a specific part (such as brain) is mentioned.

17. MISCELLANEOUS DIAGNOSTIC AND THERAPEUTIC PROCEDURES (87-99)

87 Diagnostic radiology

Includes: diagnostic X-Rays of face, head, neck, brain, skull, spine, chest, digestive tract, urinary system, genital organs, abdomen and breast.

Excludes: angiography (88).

88 Other diagnostic radiology and related techniques

Includes: CAT scan of abdomen; skeletal X-Rays of extremities; arteriograms using contrast material; and X-Rays of veins

Excludes: angiogram of eye (95).

89 Interview, evaluation, consultation, and examination

Includes: diagnostic interviews; neurological exams; gynecological exams; dental exams; digital exams of rectum; pacemaker checks; electrocardiograms and general physical exams.

90 Microscopic examination-I

Includes: microscopic examination of specimen from nervous system, spinal fluid, endocrine glands, eye, ear, nose, throat, larynx, trachea, bronchus, pleura, lung, of sputum, and blood.

91 Microscopic examination-II .

Includes: microscopic examination of specimen from liver, bile ducts or passage, pancreas, peritoneal, retroperitoneal, kidney, ureter, perirenal, periureteral tissue, bladder, urethra, prostate, seminal vesicle, urine, semen, and female genital tract.

**CLASSIFICATION OF OPERATIONS AND
APPENDIX II. NON-OPERATIVE PROCEDURES, FOR HIS**

17. MISCELLANEOUS DIAGNOSTIC AND THERAPEUTIC PROCEDURES (87-99) CONTINUED

92 Nuclear medicine

Includes: scans radiation therapy (cobalt) (iodine)

93 Physical therapy, respiratory therapy, rehabilitation, and related procedures

Includes: diagnostic physical therapy; physical therapy exercises such as breathing exercises; manual traction; training in use of prosthesis; whirlpool treatments; heat therapy; skeletal traction; speech and reading training for blind; play therapy; education therapy; artificial respiration, mouth to mouth resuscitation; oxygen and helium therapy.

94 Psychiatric interviews, consultations and evaluations

Includes: routine psychiatric visits; psychoanalysis; psychiatric electroshock therapy and other non-operative procedures relating to the psyche.

95 Ophthalmologic and otologic diagnosis and treatment

Includes: eye exams; functional tests of eye; fitting glasses, contact lens; hearing tests; and fitting hearing aids.

96 Non-operative intubation and irrigation

Includes: insertion of airway tubes; ear packing; vaginal packing; insertion of vaginal diaphragm; rectal packing; dilation of rectum and anus; manual reduction of hernia; gastric lavage; irrigation of ostomies; cleaning of eye, ear and nose; lavage of bronchus and trachea.

97 Replacement and removal of therapeutic appliances

Includes: replacement of ostomy tubes; replacement of casts; removal of nasal packing, removal of dental wiring; removal of sutures from head and neck; removal of drainage tubes; removal of IUD and removal of sutures from genital tract.

98 Non-operative removal of foreign body

Includes: removal of foreign body from digestive system, ear, nose, larynx, vagina, etc., WITHOUT INCISION.

99 Other non-operative procedures

Includes: blood transfusions, exchange transfusions, injections or infusions of therapeutic or prophylactic substances; cardiac pacemaker (battery and sensing types), acupuncture and fitting of dentures.

APPENDIX III

(Revised January 2, 1979)

**MODIFICATIONS OF THE INTERNATIONAL CLASSIFICATION OF
DISEASES, FOR USE IN THE UNITED STATES (ICD), NINTH
REVISION.**

AS REVISED FOR THE HEALTH INTERVIEW SURVEY

**U. S. DEPARTMENT OF HEALTH AND HUMAN SERVICES
Public Health Service
National Center for Health Statistics
Division of Health Interview Statistics**

APPENDIX III**EXPLANATORY NOTES**

- A. Differences Between ICD and ICDA, Eighth Revision
Medical coders, supervisors, and statisticians are referred to Vol. 1, Introduction, for a discussion of how ICD differs from ICDA, Eighth Revision. HIS will base its diagnostic codes on those of ICD, as of January 2, 1979 but will make use of many of the same types of modifications it employed when ICDA was in use--before January 2. These modifications are included in this Appendix.
- B. Purpose of Appendix III
Appendix III, completely rewritten as of January 2, 1979, lists in numerical order all diagnostic categories in 001-999 which have been changed, moved, deleted, or added by HIS in order to make the diagnostic coding more useful for HIS purposes.
- C. General Types of Modifications
Many of the modifications used by HIS for ICDA are needed also for ICD and will be continued. These refer particularly to certain symptoms and ill-defined conditions, all kinds of impairments, and late effects of diseases, and injuries.
- D. Form of Appendix III
The form of Appendix III has not been changed. Each page has four divisions. The broader one, under the heading "Category Title," lists the name of the conditions, or class of conditions, with notes explaining the nature of the modification. At the left are three columns, showing the code numbers involved under the following headings:
1. "Content"
Categories with ICD code numbers in this column have been changed in regard to some inclusion or exclusion, or need some explanation in regard to what ICD includes there. In a few cases, the category title has been changed by HIS.
 2. "Not Used"
The ICD code numbers appearing in this column are not used by HIS. A few of these refer to categories applicable only in coding of deaths and are therefore never used for this Survey. Some of them are ICD categories for late effects of diseases or injuries, and a large number include sites and types of impairments; for these the X-code is used instead. (See Appendix I for details.)
 3. "New Code"
Categories with numbers in this column are HIS special codes which have been given a number which is not used by ICD.

APPENDIX III

MODIFICATIONS OF THE INTERNATIONAL CLASSIFICATION OF DISEASES, (ICD) NINTH REVISION AS REVISED FOR THE HEALTH INTERVIEW SURVEY

U. S. DEPARTMENT OF HEALTH AND HUMAN SERVICES
Public Health Service
National Center for Health Statistics
Division of Health Interview Statistics

CONTENT	NOT USED	NEW CODE	CATEGORY TITLE
			INFECTIVE AND PARASITIC DISEASES (001-136) (137-139) <u>NOTE:</u> For HIS, for acute infections not in 001-136, reported with or due to acute infections in 001-136, code the latter <u>only</u> as stated in rule 2d in Section IV, "Combining and Merging", of the Medical Coding Manual.
011.9	009.1		COLITIS, ENTERITIS AND GASTROENTERITIS OF PRESUMED INFECTIOUS ORIGIN Invalid code for this country. Code listed terms in Vol. 1 to 558.
	009.3		DIARRHEA, OF PRESUMED INFECTIOUS ORIGIN Invalid code for this country. Code listed terms in Vol. 1 to 558.
			PULMONARY TUBERCULOSIS (011)
			PULMONARY TUBERCULOSIS <u>Includes:</u> tuberculosis, NOS, tuberculosis respiratory, NOS <u>Excludes:</u> tuberculosis, stated to be arrested or inactive--now in 019, special code for HIS
079.9	019		TUBERCULOSIS (PULMONARY) (ANY SITE) STATED TO BE ARRESTED OR INACTIVE
			VIRAL INFECTION, UNSPECIFIED <u>Includes:</u> virus (infection), NOS, type or site not specified <u>Excludes:</u> any condition due to virus that can be coded elsewhere, such as virus cold (460), virus sore throat (462), virus infection, throat (462), viral diarrhea (008.8), or intestinal virus (008.8)
094.1			NEUROSYPHILIS (094)
			GENERAL PARESIS For HIS, <u>excludes</u> general paralysis or paralysis of entire body, cause unknown, code to X40.X. If infant paralyzed at birth, code X40.9. See... NOTES...category 760-779 this Appendix.
			LATE EFFECTS OF INFECTIOUS AND PARASITIC DISEASES (137-139)
137			LATE EFFECTS OF TUBERCULOSIS
138			LATE EFFECTS OF ACUTE POLIOMYELITIS
139			LATE EFFECTS OF OTHER INFECTIOUS AND PARASITIC DISEASES

APPENDIX III

CON-TENT	NOT USED	NEW CODE	CATEGORY TITLE
218	230-234 235-238		<p>NEOPLASMS (140-239)</p> <p>These are to be coded, by site, as per ICD. Multiple sites and types in 140-239: As formerly, only one number in 140-239, per person, is to be coded, using the following order of preference, for type:</p> <p style="padding-left: 40px;">200-208 (Leukemia, Hodgkin's disease, etc.)</p> <p style="padding-left: 40px;">140-199 (Malignant neoplasms; cancer)</p> <p style="padding-left: 40px;">210-229 (Benign tumors; certain cysts)</p> <p style="padding-left: 40px;">239 (Tumors unspecified whether benign or malignant)</p> <p>If malignant, and the original (primary) site is known, code it only. If reported as secondary or metastatic, and the secondary site is known but the original site is <u>not</u> known, code to the secondary site, as per ICD, in 196-198. If no site is mentioned but the report says "full of cancer," code 199.0 or "tumors all over body," code 239.9 if <u>malignant or benign is not specified</u>, or 229.9 if benign is specified.</p> <p>If two or more sites or types in 140-229, 239 are specified, and none of the above is applicable, code only the first one mentioned.</p> <p><u>Note:</u> Cysts, or other types of tumors, classified <u>elsewhere</u> than in 140-239, are to be coded separately as reported.</p> <p>UTERINE FIBROMA For HIS, <u>includes also</u> fibroid cyst</p> <p>CARCINOMA IN SITU (230-234)</p> <p>NEOPLASM OF UNCERTAIN BEHAVIOR (235-238) For HIS, conditions indexed by ICD to categories 235-238, will be coded to Neoplasm, unspecified nature, if not specified as benign or malignant.</p>

CONTENT	NOT USED	NEW CODE	CATEGORY TITLE
			ENDOCRINE, NUTRITIONAL, AND METABOLIC DISEASES AND IMMUNITY DISORDERS (240-279)
261			<p>NUTRITIONAL MARASMUS For HIS <u>includes</u> the listed conditions of any duration, in persons of any age, if stated to be due to malnutrition or other eating or nutritional problems. <u>Excludes</u> them if due to cancer or other active disease; code the disease only.</p>
263.9			<p>OTHER AND UNSPECIFIED PROTEIN-CALORIE MALNUTRITION (236)</p> <p>UNSPECIFIED <u>Includes</u> loss of weight or underweight in persons of any age, if stated to be due to malnutrition. <u>Excludes</u> this if due to cancer or other active disease; code the disease only.</p> <p>For low birthweight constituting immaturity in infants, see ICD 765.1</p> <p>VITAMIN D DEFICIENCY (268)</p>
268.1			RICKETS, LATE EFFECT
269.9			<p>OTHER NUTRITIONAL DEFICIENCIES (269)</p> <p>UNSPECIFIED <u>Includes</u> loss of weight or underweight in persons of any age if stated to be due to eating or nutrition problems (other than malnutrition). <u>Excludes</u> this if due to cancer or other active disease; code the disease only.</p> <p>For low birthweight constituting immaturity in infants, see ICD 765.1</p>
278.0			<p>OBESITY AND OTHER HYPERALIMENTATION (278)</p> <p>OBESITY For HIS, <u>includes</u> obesity or overweight, any onset with cause unknown (or familial or hereditary) in persons of any age. <u>Excludes</u> also obesity or overweight due to any specified active cause in persons of any age, regardless of date of onset; code cause only.</p>

APPENDIX III

CONTENT	NOT USED	NEW CODE	CATEGORY TITLE
			DISEASES OF BLOOD AND BLOOD-FORMING ORGANS (280-289)
288.8			DISEASES OF WHITE BLOOD CELLS (288) OTHER For HIS, <u>includes:</u> Excess or lack of white corpuscles.
289.6			OTHER DISEASES OF BLOOD AND BLOOD FORMING ORGANS (289) OTHER For HIS, <u>includes:</u> Excess or lack of red corpuscles.
289.9			UNSPECIFIED For HIS, <u>includes:</u> low blood count; "low" blood; "tired" blood.

CON-TENT	NOT USED	NEW CODE	CATEGORY TITLE
290.1			<p>MENTAL DISORDERS (290-319)</p> <p>PSYCHOSES (290-299)</p> <p>SENILOPATHIES (290)</p> <p>PRESENILOPATHIES (290)</p> <p>Use additional code to identify the associated neurological condition.</p>
290.4			<p>ARTERIOSCLEROTIC DEMENTIA (290)</p> <p>Use additional code to identify cerebral arteriosclerosis (437.0)</p>
293			<p>TRANSIENT ORGANIC PSYCHOTIC CONDITIONS (293)</p> <p>Use additional code to identify the associated physical or neurological condition.</p>
294.1			<p>OTHER ORGANIC PSYCHOTIC CONDITIONS (CHRONIC) (294)</p> <p>DEMENTIA IN CONDITIONS CLASSIFIED ELSEWHERE (294)</p> <p>Use additional code to identify the physical condition.</p> <p>OTHER PSYCHOSES (295-299)</p> <p>Psychoses classifiable to 295-298 associated with a physical disease, injury or condition affecting the brain; code to 295-298 and code the associated physical condition also.</p>
299.1			<p>PSYCHOSES WITH ORIGIN SPECIFIC TO CHILDHOOD (299)</p> <p>DISINTEGRATIVE PSYCHOSIS (299)</p> <p>Use additional code to identify any associated neurological disorder.</p>
303			<p>NEUROTIC DISORDERS, PERSONALITY DISORDERS AND OTHER NON-PSYCHOTIC MENTAL DISORDERS (300-316)</p> <p>ALCOHOL DEPENDENCE SYNDROME (303)</p> <p>"Drunkenness" must be described as "acute" or "chronic" in order to code 303</p>
304			<p>DRUG DEPENDENCE (304)</p> <p>For HIS, addiction or dependence, or chronic poisoning by drugs, is coded to the codes, by substance, shown under "Dependence," in Vol. 2. An additional code from the Table of Adverse Effects, Section III, Volume 2, is <u>not</u> to be used.</p>

APPENDIX III

CONTENT	NOT USED	NEW CODE	CATEGORY TITLE
			(290-319)---continued
305.0			NON DEPENDENT ABUSE OF DRUGS (305) ALCOHOL For HIS, <u>includes</u> : "drinking," "drunkenness," NOS, "hangover."
306	306.0 306.6 306.7 306.8 306.9		PHYSIOLOGICAL MALFUNCTION ARISING FROM MENTAL FACTORS (306) For HIS, only categories 306.1 (respiratory), 306.2 (cardiovascular), 306.3 (skin), 306.4 (gastrointestinal), 306.5 (genitourinary) will be used. Conditions indexed by ICD to the other 4th digits in 306 as psychogenic or which are described by respondents as being due to "nerves," will be coded as if <u>NOT</u> psychogenic or due to nerves. For HIS, if allergy is also a factor in disorders codable to 306.1, 306.2, 306.3, 306.4 or 306.5, code only the allergy--ignoring "nerves."
306.2			CARDIOVASCULAR For HIS, <u>excludes</u> hypertension and specific heart and artery diseases if said to be due to "nerves;" these will be coded without reference to "nervous," or psychogenic origin.
			SPECIAL SYMPTOMS OR SYNDROMES NOT ELSEWHERE CLASSIFIED (307) For HIS, amendments have been made, as shown below. Categories 307.0-307.9 will not be used if the cause of any in 307 is known to be a physical (body) disease or current injury.
307.0			STAMMERING AND STUTTERING -3 mos. For HIS, code to X10 if 3 mos +, by the rules for Impairments. See also Section V, Impairments.
307.5			OTHER AND UNSPECIFIED DISORDERS OF EATING For HIS, <u>excludes</u> loss of appetite NOS (783.0) and faulty or improper diet among relatively stable persons (269.9)
307.8			PSYCHALGIA For HIS, <u>excludes</u> tension headache (784.0), headache due to "nerves," "nervousness," (784.0) or nervous headache (784.0)
307.9			OTHER <u>Includes</u> lalling and lisping -3 mos. If these are 3 mos +, code to X11. See also Section V, Impairments. For HIS, <u>includes</u> disturbance of speech, psychogenic or due to "nerves."

CONTENT	NOT USED	NEW CODE	CATEGORY TITLE
			(290-319)--continued
		315.0	SPECIFIC DELAYS IN DEVELOPMENT (315) SPECIFIC READING RETARDATION Conditions indexed to this category will be coded to X14, regardless of onset. See also Section V, Impairments.
		315.1	SPECIFIC ARITHMETICAL RETARDATION Conditions indexed to this category will be coded to X14, regardless of onset. See also Section V, Impairments.
		315.2	OTHER SPECIFIC LEARNING DIFFICULTIES Conditions indexed to this category will be coded to X14, regardless of onset. See also Section V, Impairments.
315.3			DEVELOPMENTAL SPEECH OR LANGUAGE DISORDER <u>Includes</u> listed conditions -3 mos. If 3 mos +, code X11. See also Section V, Impairments.
315.4			SPECIFIC MOTOR RETARDATION <u>Includes</u> listed conditions -3 mos. If 3 mos +, code to Paralysis, partial, by site. See also Section V, Impairments.
315.5			MIXED DEVELOPMENT DISORDER If speech disorders involved, 3 mos +, code X11. See also Section V, Impairments. If learning disorder involved, 3 mos +, code X14. See also Section V, Impairments. If motor coordination involved, code as for Paralysis, partial in the X-code. See also Section V, Impairments.

APPENDIX III

CON-TENT	NOT USED	NEW CODE	CATEGORY TITLE
316			<p>(290-319)-continued</p> <p>PSYCHIC FACTORS ASSOCIATED WITH DISEASES CLASSIFIED ELSEWHERE (316)</p> <p>FOR HIS, THESE CODES WILL NEVER BE USED ALONE. ALWAYS USE AN ADDITIONAL CODE TO IDENTIFY THE PHYSICAL CONDITION.</p> <p>For HIS, categories 316.0-316.9 <u>include also</u> "nerves" (and equivalents), and other emotional or psychiatric conditions <u>except psychosis</u>, if these <u>non-psychotic</u> nervous or mental conditions are due to physical causes.</p> <p>Exception: As per ICD, alcoholism (303) and drug dependence (304) and non-psychotic nervous or mental conditions due to these specific causes, will be coded to 303 or 304--not 316.8. However, if the alcoholism or drug addiction, itself, is due to a physical condition--for example, cancer--use 316.8 and code cancer also.</p> <p>For HIS, non-psychotic mental or nervous disorders due to the following will be given only one code:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> a. Menopause: code 627.2 only b. Senility or presenility: code 290.9 only <p>316.0 MUSCULOSKELETAL</p> <p>316.1 RESPIRATORY</p> <p>316.2 CARDIOVASCULAR</p> <p>316.3 SKIN</p> <p>316.4 GASTROINTESTINAL</p> <p>316.5 GENITOURINARY</p> <p>316.6 ENDOCRINE</p> <p>316.7 ORGANS OF SPECIAL SENSE</p> <p>316.8 OTHER</p> <p>316.9 UNSPECIFIED</p> <p>MENTAL RETARDATION (317-319)</p> <p>317 MENTAL RETARDATION</p> <p>318 For HIS, code all degrees of mental deficiency or retardation to X19. See also Section V, Impairments.</p> <p>319</p>

CONTENT	NOT USED	NEW CODE	CATEGORY TITLE
			DISEASES OF THE NERVOUS SYSTEM AND SENSE ORGANS (320-389) (For Vascular lesions of CNS, <u>see</u> Cerebrovascular Disease, 430-435, 437, this Appendix.)
323.5			ENCEPHALITIS, MYELITIS, AND ENCEPHALOMYELITIS (323) POSTIMMUNIZATION ENCEPHALITIS Includes current "complications" consisting of <u>encephalitis</u> or <u>myelitis</u> due to vaccination, immunization, preventive shots, against smallpox, flu, tetanus or any disease.
	326		LATE EFFECTS OF INTRACRANIAL ABSCESS OR PYOGENIC INFECTION Code residuals, 3 mos +, according to the type of residual specified, using the X-code, if applicable, or the appropriate code in ICD-- <u>not</u> 326.
	331.3		COMMUNICATING HYDROCEPHALUS For HIS, code acquired or congenital hydrocephalus to X93. See also Section V, Impairments.
	331.4		OBSTRUCTIVE HYDROCEPHALUS For HIS, code acquired or congenital hydrocephalus to X93. See also Section V, Impairments.
			OTHER EXTRAPYRAMIDAL DISEASE AND ABNORMAL MOVEMENT DISORDERS (333)
333.2			MYOCLONUS <u>Includes</u> jerk, jerking--any site
	342		HEMIPLEGIA For HIS, code to the X-code. See also Section V, Impairments.
	343		INFANTILE CEREBRAL PALSY For HIS, code the listed conditions, or any form of "cerebral palsy" to X50, using the 4th digit etiology code "9" if the condition is congenital or due to birth injury. If the cause is something else, or is not known, use the appropriate etiology code. See also Section V, Impairments.

CONTENT	NOT USED	NEW CODE	CATEGORY TITLE
			<p>(320-389)--continued</p> <p>344.0 OTHER PARALYTIC SYNDROMES (344) For HIS, all forms of paralysis, 3 mos +, are coded to the X-code. See also Section V, Impairments.</p> <p>344.4</p> <p>344.5 Paralysis -3 mos, of specified cause, code cause <u>only</u>. If -3 mos, and cause is not known, code as follows:</p> <p style="padding-left: 20px;">344.6 one arm, leg, hand, finger, foot (monoplegia): code 781.4</p> <p style="padding-left: 20px;">344.7 spine or spinal, NOS: code 344.1 as amended</p> <p style="padding-left: 20px;">344.8 two or more extremities (limbs): code to 437, as amended</p> <p style="padding-left: 20px;">344.9 other sites (bladder, face, larynx, etc.): See Vol. 2</p> <p>344.1 PARAPLEGIA For HIS, this category will be used only for paralysis, spine or spinal, with no mention of extremities (limbs) or other parts involved, with onset in past 3 months, and with cause unknown. Paralysis, spine, or spinal, NOS, 3 mos +, is coded to the X-code, according to the rules for Impairments. See also Section V, Impairments.</p> <p>345.9 EPILEPSY (345) For HIS, code any injury, -3 mos, related to epilepsy (and synonyms) to one of the codes in 800-999, by type of injury reported. If the epilepsy is of recent onset (-3 mos) and is due to injury, -3 mos do not code the epilepsy in addition. If the epilepsy is due to an old injury (3 mos +), code only to epilepsy, by type in 345.0 - 345.9.</p> <p>If any mental disorder or deficiency is reported with or as due to epilepsy, code the epilepsy, by type, and <u>also</u> the mental disorder. For example: code psychosis due to epilepsy to 294.1 and 345.-; code non-psychotic mental disorders due to epilepsy to 316.8 and 345.-; code mental deficiency due to epilepsy to X19 and 345.-.</p>
			<p>345.9 UNSPECIFIED For HIS, <u>includes</u> also: repeated or chronic, 3 mos +, convulsions, fits, seizures. <u>Excludes</u> "black out" spells (780.2); convulsions, fits, seizures, -3 mos, cause unknown (780.3).</p>

CONT- ENT	NOT USED	NEW CODE	CATEGORY TITLE
			<p>(320-389)--continued</p> <p>MIGRAINE For HIS, includes migraine due to "nerves" or allergy; code 346.- only. Vision disturbances due to migraine; code 346.8 only. Migraine and menopause: code each. Migraine and sinus: code each.</p> <p>Code headache as per ICD index, and the general coding rules for HIS.</p>
346			<p>OTHER CONDITIONS OF BRAIN For HIS, excludes "brain damage," or "birth injury," 3 mos +, with no residual specified (X99).</p> <p>For HIS, paralysis (cerebral or spinal), involving one or more extremities (limbs), is coded as explained in 344, this Appendix.</p>
348			<p>OTHER AND UNSPECIFIED DISORDERS OF THE NERVOUS SYSTEM (349)</p> <p>REACTION TO LUMBAR OR SPINAL PUNCTURE <u>Includes also</u> headache or other condition due to "spinal tap".</p> <p>See also Complications of Surgical and Medical Care (996-999) this Appendix and code according to rules listed.</p>
349.0			

APPENDIX III

CONTENT	NOT USED	NEW CODE	CATEGORY TITLE
			(320-389)--continued DISORDERS OF THE PERIPHERAL NERVOUS SYSTEM (350-359) For HIS, any type of residual palsy or paralysis listed in 350-359, or elsewhere, will be coded to the X-code, by the rules for Impairments, if onset is 3 mos+. See also Section V, Impairments.
350.1			TRIGEMINAL NERVE DISORDERS (350) OTHER TRIGEMINAL NEURALGIA <u>Excludes</u> "tic NOS," (307.2) and tic or "twitching" of face or eye as in 307.2
351.0			FACIAL NERVE DISORDERS (351) BELL'S PALSY <u>Excludes</u> facial paralysis in infants (-3 mos) (767.5); and paralysis, face, 3 mos+ (X61). See also Section V, Impairments.
353.5			NERVE ROOT AND PLEXUS DISORDERS (353) NEURALGIC AMYOTROPHY For HIS, code to X70-X79, by site. See also Section V, Impairments.
354.5			MONONEURITIS OF UPPER LIMB AND MONONEURITIS MULTIPLEX (354) MONONEURITIS MULTIPLEX <u>Includes</u> combinations of single conditions classifiable to 354. - or to 355.-.

CONT- ENT	NOT USED	NEW CODE	CATEGORY TITLE
			<p>(320-389)--continued</p> <p>DISORDERS OF THE EYE AND ADNEXA (360-379)</p> <p><u>NOTES:</u></p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> a. <u>See</u> Medical Coding Manual, Visual Impairments, for special rules for coding eye diseases and visual impairments. b. For HIS, <u>stated</u> descriptive terms indicating poor vision, loss of vision, bad eyesight, poor eyesight, etc. will be coded to X00-X03 by degree of stated visual loss in one or both eyes. c. Category 369 (Blindness) will not be used. See X-code (X00-X03) for all Visual Impairments and special etiology codes. d. For HIS, all congenital anomalies of eye in 743.0- 743.9 will be coded to the acquired diseases of the same type and site in 360-379. See also 743, this Appendix.
366			<p>CATARACT</p> <p>For HIS, if traumatic and 3 mos +, code to 366.2 only; if due to injury, -3 mos, code the original injury and the cataract (366.2) also.</p>
368			<p>VISUAL DISTURBANCES</p> <p>For HIS, <u>includes</u> the following terms: "amblyopia," "double vision," "light hurts eyes" (photophobia), "eye strain," "half vision," "blind spots," "color blindness," "night blindness," and "day blindness."</p> <p>For HIS, double vision, color blindness, night blindness and day blindness requires an additional X-code. See Section V. Impairments.</p>
		369	<p>BLINDNESS AND LOW VISION</p> <p><u>See</u> Medical Coding Manual, Visual Impairments</p>
378			<p>STRABISMUS AND OTHER DISORDERS OF BINOCULAR EYE MOVEMENTS</p> <p>For HIS, <u>includes also</u> "cross eye," "lazy eye,"; paralysis, weakness, or other disorders of muscles of eyeball.</p>
379			<p>OTHER DISORDERS OF EYE</p> <p>For HIS, <u>includes</u> eye trouble, NEC; and congenital disorders of eye not included in 360-378, as amended.</p>

APPENDIX III

CONTENT	NOT USED	NEW CODE	CATEGORY TITLE
			<p>(320-389)--continued</p> <p>DISEASES OF THE EAR AND MASTOID PROCESS (380-389)</p> <p>a. For HIS, colds and <u>acute</u> upper respiratory infections in 460-465 resulting in <u>acute</u> ear infections or earache in 381.0, 382.0, 382.9, 383.0, 383.2, 384.0 or 388.7 are coded to the <u>acute</u> ear infection or earache only, according to HIS rules for 460-465.</p> <p>b. Ear infections in 381-384 accompanying or due to infectious diseases in 001-136 are coded to 001-136 only.</p> <p>c. For HIS method of coding deafness and other hearing impairments and their causes, <u>see</u> Medical Coding Manual, Hearing Impairments.</p>
380			<p>DISORDERS OF EXTERNAL EAR</p> <p><u>Excludes</u> fungus infections of ear, assumed to be of the outer ear or skin of ear, and coded to 110.8. However, the term "infection of ear" NOS will be coded as for Otitis Media (382.9) (inflammation of the middle ear.) Infection of outer ear, code 380.1. Infection of inner ear, code 386.3.</p>
383.3			<p>COMPLICATIONS FOLLOWING MASTOIDECTOMY</p> <p>See Complications of Surgical and Medical Care (996-999) this Appendix and code according to rules listed.</p>
384.2			<p>OTHER DISORDERS OF TYMPANIC MEMBRANE (384)</p> <p>PERFORATION OF TYMPANIC MEMBRANE (NON-TRAUMATIC) (TRAUMATIC, NEC)</p> <p>For HIS, <u>includes also</u> scarred or perforated ear drum, 3 mos +, whether or not of TRAUMATIC ORIGIN; if due to injury, -3 mos, code to 872. However, if 3 mos +, and this condition has caused any degree of hearing loss, code to the appropriate X-code only.</p>

CON-TENT	NOT USED	NEW CODE	CATEGORY TITLE
			<p>(320-389)--continued</p> <p>(380-389)--continued</p> <p>OTHER DISORDERS OF EAR (388)</p> <p>SUDDEN HEARING LOSS, UNSPECIFIED For HIS, code to X-code. See also Section V, Impairments.</p> <p>UNSPECIFIED For HIS, <u>excludes</u> deformity (including absence) of ear, acquired or congenital (X90). <u>Excludes</u> any defect or deformity of ear (any part), acquired or congenital, causing hearing impairment; code these to X05-X09, by extent of hearing loss, but do not code the causative defect or deformity in addition. For HIS, <u>includes</u> conditions in 744.0-744.3 without statement or indication of a hearing impairment.</p> <p>DEAFNESS (389) For HIS, code to X05-X09</p>
388.9	388.2	389	

APPENDIX III

CONT- ENT	NOT USED	NEW CODE	CATEGORY TITLE
			<p>DISEASES OF THE CIRCULATORY SYSTEM (390-459)</p> <p>RHEUMATIC FEVER (390-398) Rheumatic fever will combine with heart disease, heart trouble and other ill-defined heart conditions when <u>stated</u> to be of rheumatic origin, or reported with rheumatic fever. Hypertension and/or arteriosclerosis <u>will not</u> combine with Rheumatic fever or Rheumatic heart disease.</p> <p>RHEUMATIC FEVER WITH HEART INVOLVEMENT For HIS, this code will not be used as both rheumatic fever and heart disease are considered as always chronic and receive the diagnostic code for the chronic state of the conditions.</p> <p>RHEUMATIC FEVER, INACTIVE (OLD) (HISTORY) For HIS, includes rheumatic fever (and synonyms) <u>stated</u> to be inactive or cured.</p> <p>HYPERTENSIVE DISEASE (401-405) NOTE: If hypertension is mentioned with conditions in 414, 430-435, 437 an additional code for hypertension is required.</p> <p>HYPERTENSIVE HEART DISEASE <u>Includes</u> conditions in 428, 429.0, 429.1, 429.2, 429.3, 429.8, and 429.9 described as "hypertensive" or is due to (caused by) hypertension.</p> <p>HYPERTENSIVE RENAL DISEASE <u>Includes</u> kidney or renal conditions in 585, 586 and 587 if hypertension is also present.</p> <p>HYPERTENSIVE HEART AND RENAL DISEASE <u>Includes</u> any condition in 403, if a heart condition in 428, 429.0, 429.1, 429.2, 429.3, 429.8, or 429.9 is <u>also</u> present and <u>described</u> as "hypertensive" or is due to (caused by) hypertension.</p>

CONT- ENT	NOT USED	NEW CODE	CATEGORY TITLE
			(390-459)--continued
	410		ISCHAEMIC HEART DISEASE (410-414) NOTE: For HIS, categories 410, 411 and 412 will not be used. Conditions indexed by ICD to 410, 411, and 412 will be coded to category 414. Thus ischemic heart disease (essentially coronary conditions), of any onset, will be coded to category 414.
	411		OTHER FORMS OF CHRONIC ISCHAEMIC HEART DISEASE (414) For HIS, <u>includes also</u> any condition indexed by ICD to 410, 411 and 412, regardless of date of onset.
	412		
414.0			CORONARY ATHEROSCLEROSIS This category must be described as "arteriosclerotic" or <u>due to</u> (caused by) arteriosclerosis; otherwise, code the heart disease and 440.9 also.
414.9			UNSPECIFIED Conditions codable to 414.9 with others in 414.0-414.8: prefer codes 414.0-414.8 over 414.9. If multiple conditions codable to 414.0-414.8, code each condition.
			CHRONIC PULMONARY HEART DISEASE (416)
416.1			KYPHOSCOLIOTIC HEART DISEASE For HIS, <u>includes also</u> any conditions in 426-429, 785.0, and 785.1 with mention of curvature of spine as in X70, <u>provided</u> the curvature is stated to be related to, or causing, the heart condition. Code X70 also.
			OTHER FORMS OF HEART DISEASE (420-429)
424			OTHER DISEASES OF ENDOCARDIUM For HIS, condition in 424 described as "arteriosclerotic", or arteriosclerosis is given as the cause of endocarditis, code 424 only. Conditions in 424 reported with rheumatic fever, rheumatic heart disease or is described as rheumatic will be coded to Rheumatic heart disease. Code arteriosclerosis also, if present.

APPENDIX III

CON-TENT	NOT USED	NEW CODE	CATEGORY TITLE
			(390-459)--continued
427			CARDIAC DYSRHYTHMIAS For conditions in 427 described as <u>due to</u> or <u>caused by</u> a heart condition in 410-414, code the heart condition in 410-414 only. <u>See also</u> category 410-414 this Appendix.
428			HEART FAILURE Conditions codable to 428 described as "hypertensive" or <u>due to</u> (caused by) hypertension will be coded to 402.9. Conditions in 428 described as <u>due to</u> or <u>caused by</u> a heart condition in 410-414 will be coded to the heart condition in 410-414 only. <u>See also</u> category 410-414 this Appendix.
429			ILL-DEFINED DESCRIPTIONS AND COMPLICATIONS OF HEART DISEASE Conditions in 429.0-429.3, 429.8 and 429.9 described as "hypertensive" or <u>due to</u> (caused by) hypertension will be coded to 402.9. Conditions codable to 429.0, 429.1, 429.2 include the listed conditions with or without mention of arteriosclerosis. However, code arteriosclerosis also, if present. Conditions codable to 429.0, 429.1, 429.3, 429.8 or 429.9 with rheumatic fever or described as rheumatic, will be coded as Rheumatic heart disease. If hypertension and/or arteriosclerosis is also present, code each separately. Conditions in 429 described as <u>due to</u> or <u>caused by</u> a heart condition in 410-414 will be coded to the heart condition in 410-414 only. <u>See also</u> category 410-414 this Appendix.
429.4			FUNCTIONAL DISTURBANCES FOLLOWING CARDIAC SURGERY See Complications of Surgical and Medical Care (996-999) this Appendix and code according to rules listed.
	429.6		RUPTURE OF PAPILLARY MUSCLE For HIS, code to category 414.

CONT- TENT	NOT USED	NEW CODE	CATEGORY TITLE
			<p>(390-459)--continued</p> <p>CEREBROVASCULAR DISEASE (430-438)</p> <p>NOTES:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> a. For HIS, categories 436 and 438 will not be used. Conditions indexed by ICD to 436 will be coded to 437. Thus, if specific lesions in 430-435 are not applicable, only 437 will be used in this series, regardless of date of onset. b. If hypertension is mentioned with categories 430-435, 437, code hypertension <u>also</u>. c. As formerly, for HIS, no person will be given more than one code in 430-435, 437 even though he may have had more than one "stroke" or other cerebrovascular condition, and whether or not he has one or more residuals. d. If the person has paralysis 3 mos+, or any other impairment in the X-code, due to a cerebrovascular lesion, code these also, by the rules for Impairments, with .1 for the etiology. For example: "hemiplegia 3 mos+, speech defect 3 mos+, both due to stroke," code X41.1, X11.1 and 437.9. e. Paralysis of a single extremity (one arm, leg, hand, or foot), <u>-3 mos, of unknown cause</u> is to be coded to 781.4. Paralysis of 2 or more extremities (hemiplegia, paraplegia, etc.,) <u>-3 mos, of unknown cause</u> will be coded to 437, as amended. f. For psychosis and non-psychotic mental disorders, due to cerebrovascular lesions, code 290.4, 294.1, 294.8 or 316.8 <u>also</u>, as appropriate. g. Any condition in 430-435, 437 due to an old injury (3 mos+) will be coded without reference to the original injury; however, if due to a recent injury (-3 mos), code only to the causative injury. <p>OTHER AND ILL-DEFINED CEREBROVASCULAR DISEASE (437)</p> <p>437.0 CEREBRAL ATHEROSCLEROSIS This category must be described as "arteriosclerotic" or <u>due to</u> (caused by); otherwise, code 437.9 and 440.9.</p>

APPENDIX III

CON-TENT	NOT USED	NEW CODE	CATEGORY TITLE
440.2			<p>(390-459)--continued</p> <p>DISEASES OF ARTERIES, ARTERIOLES, AND CAPILLARIES (440-448)</p> <p>ATHEROSCLEROSIS (440)</p> <p>a. Arteriosclerosis <u>will not</u> combine with any condition unless <u>stated due to</u> (caused by) or described as "arteriosclerotic".</p> <p>b. If arteriosclerosis is mentioned with heart conditions in 429.0, 429.1 and 429.2, code the heart condition and arteriosclerosis also.</p> <p>OF ARTERIES OF THE EXTREMITIES The term atherosclerotic gangrene must be so described or gangrene must be <u>due to</u> (caused by) arteriosclerosis.</p>
457.0			<p>DISEASES OF VEINS AND LYMPHATICS, AND OTHER DISEASES OF CIRCULATORY SYSTEM (451-459)</p> <p>NONINFECTIVE DISORDERS OF LYMPHATIC CHANNELS (457)</p> <p>POSTMASTECTOMY LYMPHEDEMA SYNDROME For HIS, <u>includes</u> "swollen arm" or other lymph gland difficulties following removal of breast: code X32 <u>and</u> 457.0. <u>Excludes</u> present and specified "complications" of breast removal which are <u>not</u> part of the lymphedema syndrome; code these to 997 OR 998 <u>and</u> X32. See also Complications of Surgical and Medical Care (996-999) this Appendix and code according to rules listed, and see also Section V, Impairments.</p>

CONT- ENT	NOT USED	NEW CODE	CATEGORY TITLE
460			<p>DISEASES OF THE RESPIRATORY SYSTEM (460-519) For HIS, <u>excludes</u> certain symptoms referable to the respiratory system (786.0-786.9); and "virus" NOS (079.9). See also 079.9</p> <p>For HIS, any codable <u>acute</u> infection in 460-519 (for example, cold, pneumonia, acute bronchitis) reported with or as due to an <u>acute</u> infection codable to 001-136 (except 079.9)* will be coded to 001-136, (except 079.9)* only.</p> <p>ACUTE RESPIRATORY INFECTIONS (460-466) For HIS, multiple <u>acute upper</u> respiratory infections in 460-464, will be coded to 465.8 only; and any <u>acute</u> conditions in 460-465 reported with or as due to the following acute conditions, will be combined using only the code listed below:</p> <p style="margin-left: 40px;">acute bronchitis and bronchiolitis 466.-</p> <p style="margin-left: 40px;">influenza in 487 487.0-487.8 by type</p> <p style="margin-left: 40px;">pneumonia in 480-486 480-486 by type</p> <p>Any <u>acute</u> condition in 460-465 reported as due to or with an <u>acute</u> ear infection in 381.0, 382.0, 382.9, 383.0, 383.2, 384.0 or 388.7 (earache) will be coded to the <u>acute</u> ear infection or earache only.</p> <p>Acute conditions in 466.- reported with or due to conditions in 480-486 (pneumonia) and 487 (influenza) will be coded to 480-486, 487 categories only.</p> <p>ACUTE NASOPHARYNGITIS (COMMON COLD) For HIS, <u>includes</u> cold, -3 mos NOS, or <u>with</u> diarrhea, NOS, or upset stomach, or other symptoms of the cold, -3 mos; if 3 mos+, code 472.2. <u>Includes</u> the term "cold," -3 mos, on or in eye, back, stomach, kidney, or other "odd" site, but if such condition is 3 mos+, code as for "trouble" of the site. <u>Includes also</u> "congestion, nose" NEC, acute or chronic.</p>
461			<p>ACUTE SINUSITIS For HIS, <u>includes also</u> sinus conditions (nasal) of specified or unspecified sites, in 461.0-461.9, if -3 mos.</p>

APPENDIX III

CONT- ENT	NOT USED	NEW CODE	CATEGORY TITLE
			(460-519)--continued (460-466)--continued
462			ACUTE PHARYNGITIS For HIS, <u>includes</u> sore, inflamed throat, or viral infection throat, -3 mos; if 3 mos+, code 472.1. <u>Excludes</u> infected throat NOS, code 478.2 (any onset).
463			ACUTE TONSILLITIS For HIS, <u>includes</u> adenoids or tonsils, "bad," diseased, enlarged, or infected, -3 mos; if 3 mos+, see category 474, this Appendix.
465			ACUTE UPPER RESPIRATORY INFECTIONS OF MULTIPLE OR UNSPECIFIED SITE For HIS, <u>see</u> notes above 460.
466			ACUTE BRONCHITIS AND BRONCHIOLITIS <u>Includes</u> the listed conditions, and "bronchial trouble," onset -3 mos, (with cold -3 mos). <u>See also</u> notes above 460. For bronchitis, with bronchiectasis, or emphysema, <u>see</u> 491, this Appendix.
			OTHER DISEASES OF UPPER RESPIRATORY TRACT (470-478)
474			CHRONIC DISEASE OF TONSILS AND ADENOIDS For HIS, if on Condition Page and also on Hospital Page, with or without surgery, code to 474 regardless of onset.
477			ALLERGIC RHINITIS <u>Includes also</u> allergy manifested by ear or upper respiratory (nose, sinus, throat) conditions, and symptoms such as sneezing, "nose itches," runny nose. For multiple allergic respiratory manifestations involving also those in 493.0-493.9, code 493.0-493.9 only; if <u>skin</u> or <u>other</u> allergy is indicated, code those separately.
		477.7	ALLERGIES WITH MULTIPLE CAUSES For HIS, <u>includes</u> upper respiratory allergies with multiple specified causes in 477.0 and 477.8, without lower respiratory involvement.

CONTENT	NOT USED	NEW CODE	CATEGORY TITLE
			(460-519)--continued (470-478)--continued
			OTHER DISEASES OF UPPER RESPIRATORY TRACT (478)
478.2			OTHER DISEASES OF PHARYNX, NOT ELSEWHERE CLASSIFIED <u>Includes</u> infected throat NOS (any onset) <u>Excludes</u> "throat infection, viral"--code as for pharyngitis (462); and paralysis of throat 3 mos + (X63); if speech is affected, code as speech impairment NEC (X11), only.
478.3			PARALYSIS OF VOCAL CORDS OR LARYNX <u>Excludes</u> paralysis of these sites, 3 mos + (X63); if speech is affected, code as speech impairment NEC (X11), only.
			PNEUMONIA (480-486) AND INFLUENZA (487) Code pneumonia, by type, as in Vol. 2. For HIS, acute conditions in 460-466, or pleurisy, (511.0), with conditions in 480-486 will be coded to 480-486 only. <u>See also</u> notes above 460.
			CHRONIC OBSTRUCTIVE PULMONARY DISEASE AND ALLIED CONDITIONS (490-496)
490			BRONCHITIS, UNQUALIFIED <u>Excludes</u> bronchitis -3 mos (466.0); bronchitis 3 mos + (491.9); for bronchitis, onset unknown, described as asthmatic, code 493.9. For bronchitis reported with asthma, code asthma (493.0-493.9) and 490 also.
491			CHRONIC BRONCHITIS For HIS, <u>excludes also</u> , bronchitis of any onset described as allergic or due to allergy (493.9). For bronchitis reported with bronchiectasis, code 494 only; described as emphysematous or with emphysema, code the bronchitis, and 492 also. For bronchitis reported with asthma, code asthma (493.0-493.9) and 491. - also.
491.2			OBSTRUCTIVE CHRONIC BRONCHITIS <u>Includes</u> chronic bronchitis described as asthmatic or <u>due to</u> asthma.

APPENDIX III

CONTENT	NOT USED	NEW CODE	CATEGORY TITLE
			(460-519)--continued (490-496)--continued
492			EMPHYSEMA For HIS, for emphysema with other respiratory conditions in 460-519, code the other respiratory conditions as instructed by HIS, and code 492 <u>also</u> .
493			ASTHMA For HIS, includes also: allergy manifested by coughing, and breathing difficulty, wheezing, chest symptoms; for allergic pneumonia, however, code 518.3 as per ICD. multiple respiratory allergic symptoms, upper <u>and</u> lower. <u>Excludes</u> also allergy manifested by upper respiratory symptoms but without symptoms of asthma: <u>see</u> 477.9 (hay fever). For asthma (493) with <u>skin or other</u> allergy also, code 493.- AND the skin or other allergy separately. See also 692 and 693, this Appendix. <u>Excludes</u> cardiac asthma (428.1) as per ICD. However, if a heart condition is reported, and asthma NOS or allergic is also reported, with no clear indication that the asthma is due to the heart condition, code the heart condition and code 493.9 <u>also</u> .
494			BRONCHIECTASIS For HIS, for bronchitis of any onset with bronchiectasis, code 494 only. For bronchiectasis with other respiratory conditions in 460-519, code 494 and the other respiratory condition(s), as instructed by HIS.
			OTHER DISEASES OF RESPIRATORY SYSTEM (510-519)
			PLEURISY (511)
511.0			WITHOUT MENTION OF EFFUSION OR CURRENT TUBERCULOSIS For HIS, <u>excludes also</u> pleurisy as in 511 with pneumonia; code to pneumonia.

CONTENT	NOT USED	NEW CODE	CATEGORY TITLE
			DISEASES OF THE DIGESTIVE SYSTEM (520-579)
			DISEASES OF ORAL CAVITY, SALIVARY GLANDS, AND JAWS (520-529) For HIS, <u>see</u> X92 (Other Dentofacial Handicap) for types of tooth (teeth) conditions to be coded as Impairments, any onset.
		520.0 520.1 520.2 520.5 521.6	ANONDONTIA SUPERNUMERARY TEETH ABNORMALITIES OF SIZE AND FORM HEREDITARY DISTURBANCES IN TOOTH STRUCTURE NEC ANKYLOSIS, DENTAL
		524	DENTOFACIAL ANOMALIES INCLUDING MALOCCLUSION
			OTHER DISEASES AND CONDITIONS OF THE TEETH AND SUPPORTING STRUCTURES (525)
525.1			ACQUIRED ABSENCE OF TEETH To be used by HIS only for absence or loss of tooth (teeth) or broken tooth (teeth), when -3 mos, and <u>not</u> due to injury -3 mos. <u>Excludes</u> acquired absence of teeth 3 mos+ (X92.)
			DISEASES OF THE JAWS (526)
526.9			UNSPECIFIED For HIS, <u>excludes</u> pain in jaw, 3 mos+ (X92).
			HERNIA OF ABDOMINAL CAVITY (550-553) Hernia will be coded by site as per ICD, if the site is mentioned. For HIS, <u>excludes</u> hernia, -3 mos, due to "one time" injury NEC, heavy lifting, or strain (848). <u>See also</u> 848. Hernia, 3 mos+, due to injury, will be coded to 550-553 without reference to traumatic origin.
			OTHER DISEASES OF INTESTINES AND PERITONEUM (560-569) Paralysis (partial) of intestines or any part of digestive tract, 3 mos+, code X63. <u>See also</u> Section V, Impairments.

APPENDIX III

CONTENT	NOT USED	NEW CODE	CATEGORY TITLE
			(520-579)--continued FUNCTIONAL DIGESTIVE DISORDERS, NOT ELSEWHERE CLASSIFIED (564)
564.2			POSTGASTRECTOMY DUMPING SYNDROME <u>Includes</u> nausea and other digestive symptoms, faintness, etc., due to a previous operation to remove the stomach (or part of it.) NO X-code is required to express absence of stomach. See also Complications of Surgical and Medical Care (996-999) this Appendix and code according to rules listed.
569.6			OTHER DISORDERS OF INTESTINE (569) COLOSTOMY AND ENTEROSTOMY MALFUNCTION For HIS, <u>includes</u> present difficulties following previous surgery to create an artificial orifice (opening) for the bowel; code X94 and 569.6. See also Complications of Surgical and Medical Care (996-999) this Appendix and code according to rules listed and see also Section V, Impairments. OTHER DISEASES OF DIGESTIVE SYSTEM (570-579)
573.3			OTHER DISORDERS OF LIVER (573) HEPATITIS UNSPECIFIED For HIS, <u>includes</u> hepatitis, unspecified type or cause, any onset. <u>HEPATITIS must be described as "acute", "chronic" or "infectious," or other specified modifiers listed in Vol. 2, in order to be coded to the various kinds of hepatitis.</u>
573.8			OTHER <u>Includes</u> hypertrophy of liver <u>described as acute.</u>
			CHOLELITHIASIS (574)
574.2			CALCULUS OF GALLBLADDER WITHOUT MENTION OF CHOLECYSTITIS For HIS, <u>includes</u> also "disease of gallbladder NOS" with gallstones.
			OTHER DISORDERS OF BILIARY TRACT (576)
576.0			POSTCHOLECTOMY SYNDROME This code will be used only when the complication is stated as "postcholectomy syndrome." See Complications of Surgical and Medical Care (996-999) and code according to rules listed.

CONT- TENT	NOT USED	NEW CODE	CATEGORY TITLE
			DISEASES OF THE GENITOURINARY SYSTEM (580-629)
			CHRONIC GLOMERULONEPHRITIS (582)
582.9			UNSPECIFIED For chronic nephritis described as "arteriosclerotic," see 403.
			NEPHRITIS AND NEPHROPATHY, NOT SPECIFIED AS ACUTE OR CHRONIC (583)
583.9			WITH UNSPECIFIED PATHOLOGICAL LESION IN KIDNEY Use this category only when onset is unknown.
			OTHER DISEASES OF URINARY SYSTEM (590-599)
			OTHER DISORDERS OF BLADDER (596)
596.5			OTHER FUNCTIONAL DISORDERS OF BLADDER For HIS, <u>includes</u> paralysis, bladder, unknown cause, -3 mos. If -3 mos, with known cause, code cause only. <u>Excludes</u> paralysis, 3 mos+, code to X62.
			DISORDERS OF BREAST (610-611)
			OTHER DISORDERS OF BREAST (611)
611.8			OTHER For HIS, <u>excludes</u> absence of breast (X32) and absence, nipple (congenital) (X32.9).
			OTHER DISORDERS OF FEMALE GENITAL TRACT (617-629)
			MENOPAUSAL AND POSTMENOPAUSAL DISORDERS (627)
627.2			MENOPAUSAL OR FEMALE CLIMACTERIC STATES For HIS, <u>includes</u> non-psychotic nervous or mental conditions due to menopause; code 627.2 only. <u>Excludes</u> menopause causing psychosis as in 296.1, 297.2, 298.8; in such cases, code the psychosis only.

APPENDIX III

CON-TENT	NOT USED	NEW CODE	CATEGORY TITLE
			<p>DELIVERIES AND COMPLICATIONS OF PREGNANCY, CHILDBIRTH, AND THE PUERPERIUM (630-676)</p> <p><u>Notes for HIS</u></p> <ol style="list-style-type: none">1. Any hospitalization in past 2 weeks must have a Condition Page.2. On the Condition Page, only one code in 630-639 (Abortion) or 650-669 (Delivery) will be used per person.3. For conditions "due to pregnancy," with a clear indication that the person is currently pregnant, code to pregnancy codes only. For conditions "due to pregnancy," with NO indication that the person is currently pregnant, code as for the non-pregnant state.4. See Vol. 1 for 4th digits to categories 634-638.

CONT- TENT	NOT USED	NEW CODE	CATEGORY TITLE
692.9			<p>DISEASES OF THE SKIN AND SUBCUTANEOUS TISSUE (680-709)</p> <p>OTHER INFLAMMATORY CONDITIONS OF SKIN AND SUBCUTANEOUS TISSUE (690-698)</p> <p>CONTACT DERMATITIS AND OTHER ECZEMA (692) For HIS, <u>includes</u> skin allergy due to any substance applied to or in contact with skin (external).</p> <p>If an allergic skin reaction is due to an external substance in 692 and an internal substance in 693, see 693.2.</p> <p>If multiple skin allergies are reported in 692.0-692.8, code to 692.9. If multiple allergies involve skin, respiratory, and other allergies, code the skin, respiratory, and any other type of allergy separately.</p> <p>If a skin allergy in 692 is "due to nerves," code the allergy---ignoring "nerves."</p> <p>If a nervous condition is reported as due to a skin allergy in 692, code 316.3 (see 316, this Appendix) for the nervous condition and code the skin allergy also.</p> <p>UNSPECIFIED CAUSE For HIS, <u>includes</u> multiple allergies of the types and causes included in 692.0-692.8. For multiple allergies involving skin and also respiratory system, code the skin allergy and code the respiratory allergy separately.</p>

CON-TENT	NOT USED	NEW CODE	CATEGORY TITLE
			<p>(680-709)--continued (690-698)--continued</p> <p>DERMATITIS DUE TO SUBSTANCES TAKEN INTERNALLY (693) <u>Includes</u> skin allergy due to ingested (swallowed) substances.</p> <p>If multiple allergic skin reactions involving substance in 693 and 692 are reported, see 693.2.</p> <p>If a skin allergy in 693 is due to "nerves, " code the allergy---ignoring "nerves."</p> <p>If a nervous condition is reported as due to a skin allergy in 693, code 316.3 (see also 316, this Appendix) for the nervous condition and code the skin allergy also.</p> <p>For multiple allergies involving skin and other types, see 692.</p>
693.1		693.2	<p>DUE TO FOOD <u>Excludes</u> allergy to food with gastrointestinal symptoms (558), gastritis (535.4), and allergy to food with respiratory conditions in 477.- and 493.-.</p> <p>SKIN ALLERGIES WITH MULTIPLE CAUSES For HIS, <u>includes</u> skin allergies with multiple specified causes in 692.0-692.9 and 693.0-693.9.</p>
693.9			<p>DUE TO UNSPECIFIED SUBSTANCE For HIS, <u>includes</u> skin allergies with multiple specified causes in 693.0-693.8.</p>
698			<p>PRURITUS AND RELATED CONDITIONS For HIS, <u>includes</u> "itching" with dry skin; or "dry skin" NOS. <u>Excludes</u> itching (with dry skin) if any other skin condition in 680-709 is mentioned.</p>

CONTENT	NOT USED	NEW CODE	CATEGORY TITLE
			(680-709)---continued
			OTHER DISEASES OF SKIN AND SUBCUTANEOUS TISSUE (700-709)
			CHRONIC ULCER OF SKIN (707)
707.1			ULCER OF LOWER LIMBS, EXCEPT DECUBITUS <u>Includes also</u> "open leg," and "open" or "running" sores of leg, onset 3 mos +; if these are -3 mos, code as for Infection.
707.9			CHRONIC ULCER OF UNSPECIFIED SITE <u>Includes</u> ulcer NOS, as per ICD, but if the questionnaire indicates that stomach or duodenal ulcer is meant, code as for Ulcer of <u>those</u> sites.
			OTHER DISORDERS OF SKIN AND SUBCUTANEOUS TISSUE (709)
709.0			DYSCHROMIA For HIS, <u>includes also</u> spots NOS on skin, and discolored patches NOS on skin.
709.2			SCAR CONDITIONS AND FIBROSIS OF SKIN <u>Excludes:</u> Keloid scar, any site, code 701.4 as per ICD SCAR, (disfiguring) of face, nose, lips, and ears, code X90 SCAR (painful) (tender) (contracting) of limbs, neck, back, external sites of trunk, or scar NOS of these sites, code to X70-X79, by site. See also Section V, Impairments.

APPENDIX III

CON-TENT	NOT USED	NEW CODE	CATEGORY TITLE
		718.6	<p>DISEASES OF THE MUSCULOSKELETAL SYSTEM AND CONNECTIVE TISSUE (710-739)</p> <p>ARTHROPATHIES AND RELATED DISORDERS (710-719)</p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> 1. For HIS, any form of arthritis said to be due to injury -3 mos will be coded to the injury codes only. Arthritis, 3 mos+, due to injury will be coded to the disease codes only. 2. If a specific deformity (in X70-X79) is reported with arthritis, code both. See also Section V, Impairments. <p>DERANGEMENT OF JOINT (717-718)</p> <p>"Instability" ("joint slips out"), dislocation, "locking," fusion and sprain of joint -3 mos will be coded per ICD. If 3 mos+, and due to a specified chronic disease, code the chronic disease only; otherwise, code to X80-X89, by site. See also Section V, Impairments. Contracture of joint, any onset, code to Deformity, (X70-X79) by site. See also Section V, Impairments.</p> <p>UNSPECIFIED PROTRUSION ACETABULI For HIS, code to X75. See also Section V, Impairments.</p> <p>OTHER AND UNSPECIFIED DISORDER OF JOINT (719) Swelling, stiffness, pain and other symptoms pertaining to joints -3 mos and back (724) -3 mos will be coded per Short Index or Vol. 2. If of unspecified cause or due to old injury (3 mos+), code to X80-X89, by site. See also Section V, Impairments.</p> <p>DORSOPATHIES (720-724) Swelling, stiffness, pain and other symptoms pertaining to joints -3 mos and back (724) -3 mos will be coded as per Short Index or Vol. 2. If of unspecified cause or due to old injury (3 mos+), code to X80-X89, by site. See also Section V, Impairments.</p>

CONTENT	NOT USED	NEW CODE	CATEGORY TITLE
			(710-739)--continued (720-724)--continued
722			INTERVERTEBRAL DISC DISORDERS (722) For HIS, <u>includes also</u> all "disc" conditions at any onset of unspecified origin. If the "disc" condition is due to an injury 3 mos +, code the "disc" condition to 722.0-722.9 without reference to injury. If the "disc" condition is due to a current injury (-3 mos), code to 839. <u>See</u> 839 this Appendix.
722.8			POSTLAMINECTOMY SYNDROME This code will be used only when the complication is stated as "postlaminectomy syndrome." See Complications of Surgical and Medical Care (996-999) and code according to rules listed.
723.5			OTHER DISORDERS OF CERVICAL REGION (723) <u>Excludes:</u> conditions codable to 723 <u>due to</u> intervertebral disc disorders; code 722.- only.
			TORTICOLLIS NOT SPECIFIED AS CONGENITAL, PSYCHOGENIC OR TRAUMATIC For HIS, code torticollis (contracture, neck) to X79; code "stiff neck," -3 mos to 719.5; if 3 mos +, code to X80. See also Section V, Impairments.
			OTHER AND UNSPECIFIED DISORDERS OF BACK (724) For HIS, conditions codable to categories 724.1 724.5, 724.6, 724.7, 724.8, and 724.9, 3 mos + will be coded as Orthopedic Impairment (X80-X89) by site. <u>Excludes:</u> conditions codable to 724 <u>due to</u> intervertebral disc disorders; code 722.- only.
			RHEUMATISM, EXCLUDING THE BACK (725-729) Swelling, stiffness, pain and other symptoms pertaining to limbs -3 mos will be coded per Short Index or Vol. 2. If of unspecified cause or due to old injury (3 mos +) code to X80-X89 by site. See also Section V, Impairments.
			"Instability" ("joint slips out"), dislocation, "locking", fusion and sprain of joint -3 mos will be coded per ICD. If 3 mos + and due to a specified chronic disease, code the chronic disease only; otherwise, code to X80-X89 by site. See also Section V, Impairments. Contracture of joint, any onset, code to Deformity (X70-X79) by site. See also Section V, Impairments.

APPENDIX III

CONTENT	NOT USED	NEW CODE	CATEGORY TITLE
			(710-739)--continued (725-729)--continued
727.8			OTHER DISORDERS OF SYNOVIA, TENDON AND BURSA (727) Code Short Achilles Tendon to X76 with appropriate 4th digit etiology code. See also Section V, Impairments.
			OTHER For HIS, <u>excludes</u> contracture tendon, to be coded as for Deformity, by site. See also Section V, Impairments.
			DISORDERS OF MUSCLE, LIGAMENT AND FASCIA (728) For HIS, <u>excludes</u> atrophy, idiopathic muscular atrophy and other contractures, of limb, back, trunk (and muscles and ligaments) which are coded to X70-X79, by site and type. See also Section V, Impairments.
	728.2		MUSCULAR WASTING AND DISUSE ATROPHY, NOT ELSEWHERE CLASSIFIED For HIS, code to X70-X79, by site. See also Section V, Impairments.
	728.4		LAXITY OF LIGAMENT For HIS, code as for Orth. Imp., by site. See also Section V, Impairments.
	728.6		CONTRACTURE OF PALMAR FASCIA (DUPUYTREN'S CONTRACTURE) For HIS, code to X74. See also Section V, Impairments.
728.8			OTHER DISORDERS OF MUSCLE, LIGAMENT AND FASCIA For HIS, <u>includes</u> spasms, twitching, tremor, trembling, involving muscles of limbs, back, and trunk, -3 mos. If these are 3 mos + and due to a specified chronic disease, code the chronic disease only; otherwise, code to X80-X89, by site. See also Section V, Impairments.
			OTHER DISORDERS OF SOFT TISSUE (729)
729.9			OTHER AND UNSPECIFIED DISORDER OF SOFT TISSUE For HIS, <u>includes also</u> pain and trouble -3 mos of multiple sites in 719, 723, 724, 728, and 729. See also General Notes (725-729).

CONT- ENT	NOT USED	NEW CODE	CATEGORY TITLE
			(710-739)--continued
	734		FLATFOOT For HIS, code to X77. See also Section V, Impairments.
	735		ACQUIRED DEFORMITIES OF TOE For HIS, code to X76. Code "dropped toe" as for Paralysis (X-code). See also Section V, Impairments.
	736		OTHER ACQUIRED DEFORMITIES OF LIMBS For HIS, code to the X-code by type, site and cause. See also Section V, Impairments.
	737		CURVATURE OF SPINE For HIS, code to X70 whether congenital or not. See also Section V, Impairments. If a heart disease in 426-429, 785.0 or 785.1 is present, code the heart disease also.
	738		OTHER ACQUIRED DEFORMITY For HIS, code to the X-code by type, site and cause. See also Section V, Impairments.

APPENDIX III

CONTENT	NOT USED	NEW CODE	CATEGORY TITLE
			<p>CONGENITAL ANOMALIES (740-759)</p> <p><u>Notes for HIS:</u></p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> 1. The phrase "since birth" can usually be interpreted to mean "congenital origin" or "born with" or "existing at birth," but it should not be so interpreted when the defect is "speaking" NEC or "walking" NEC or in some function that is not developed at birth. When "since birth" is used and the condition could not have been present at birth, the etiologic code ".X" (other) will be used. "Since birth" can be taken to mean congenital origin for conditions that are generally or always congenital. 2. Categories 740-759 will exclude the following which if congenital, will be classified to the X-code with ".9" in the 4th digit (signifying congenital origin or birth injury): <ul style="list-style-type: none"> absence of extremities, eyes, ears, nose, jaws, teeth, larynx, lung, kidney, breast. defects of vision, hearing, speech, sensation, intelligence structural defects and deformities of the skull, ear, face, nose, neck, spine, extremities, bones, joints, muscles, tendons. 3. Congenital <u>diseases</u> of the <u>eye</u> and <u>ear</u> will be coded to the categories for acquired conditions of the same nature in 360-368, 370-379 and 388 to facilitate the count of disorders of eye and ear. 4. Congenital anomalies of internal organs (except congenital absence of larynx, lung, and kidney), and other congenital anomalies <u>NOT</u> classifiable to the X-code, will be coded as per ICD.

CONTENT	NOT USED	NEW CODE	CATEGORY TITLE
			(740-759)--continued
	740		ANENCEPHALUS AND SIMILAR ANOMALIES
	741		SPINA BIFIDA Code to X71.9. See also Section V, Impairments.
			OTHER CONGENITAL ANOMALIES OF NERVOUS SYSTEM (742)
	742.0		ENCEPHALOCELE Code to X93.9. See also Section V, Impairments.
	742.1		MICROCEPHALUS Code to X93.9. See also Section V, Impairments.
	742.3		CONGENITAL HYDROCEPHALUS Code to X93.9. See also Section V, Impairments.
	743		CONGENITAL ANOMALIES OF EYE For HIS, all conditions in 743 will be coded to their counterparts among <u>acquired</u> diseases of the eye. See also categories 360-379, this Appendix.
	744.0		CONGENITAL ANOMALIES OF EAR, FACE AND NECK
	744.1		For HIS, all conditions in 744.0-744.3 will be coded to 388.9
	744.2		and/or the X-code. See also 388.9, this Appendix, and Section V,
	744.3		Hearing Impairments.
	744.5		WEBBING OF NECK Code to X79.9. See also Section V, Impairments.
	744.8		OTHER SPECIFIED ANOMALIES OF FACE AND NECK Code anomalies of face in 744.8 to X90.9 Code anomalies of neck in 744.8 to X79.9 See also Section V, Impairments.
	744.9		UNSPECIFIED ANOMALIES OF FACE AND NECK Code anomalies of face in 744.9 to X90.9 Code anomalies of neck in 744.9 to X79.9 See also Section V, Impairments.

APPENDIX III

CONTENT	NOT USED	NEW CODE	CATEGORY TITLE
			(740-759)--continued
			CONGENITAL ANOMALIES OF RESPIRATORY SYSTEM (748)
748.1			OTHER ANOMALIES OF NOSE For HIS, <u>excludes</u> congenital absence or other congenital disfiguring defects of nose structure (X90.9). See also Section V, Impairments.
748.3			OTHER ANOMALIES OF LARYNX, TRACHEA, AND BRONCHUS For HIS, <u>excludes</u> congenital absence of larynx (X11.9). See also Section V, Impairments.
748.5			AGENESIS, HYPOPLASIA AND DYSPLASIA OF LUNG <u>Excludes</u> absence, agenesis and aplasia of lung. Code to X30.9. See also Section V, Impairments.
	749		CLEFT PALATE AND CLEFT LIP Code to X91.9. See also Section V, Impairments.
			OTHER CONGENITAL ANOMALIES OF UPPER ALIMENTARY TRACT (750)
	750.0		TONGUE TIE Code to X11.9. See also Section V, Impairments.
	750.1		OTHER ANOMALIES OF TONGUE Code to X11.9. See also Section V, Impairments.
750.5			CONGENITAL HYPERTROPHIC PYLORIC STENOSIS For HIS, <u>excludes</u> pylorospasm NOS or acquired (537.8)
			CONGENITAL ANOMALIES OF URINARY SYSTEM (753)
	753.0		RENAL AGENESIS AND DYSGENESIS Code to X31.9. See also Section V, Impairments.

CONTENT	NOT USED	NEW CODE	CATEGORY TITLE
			(740-759)--continued
			CERTAIN CONGENITAL MUSCULOSKELETAL DEFORMITIES (754)
754.0			OF SKULL, FACE AND JAW For HIS, <u>excludes</u> : Asymmetry of face (X90.9) Compression facies (X90.9) Dolichocephaly (X93.9) Plagiocephaly (X93.9) Potters facies (X90.9) Other disfiguring congenital defects of face and jaw (X90.9) Other disfiguring congenital defects of skull (X93.9)
754.1			OF STERNOCLIDOMASTOID MUSCLE For HIS, <u>excludes</u> congenital torticollis (X79.9) and congenital contracture of neck muscles (X79.9).
754.2			OF SPINE Code to X70.9
754.3			CONGENITAL DISLOCATION OF HIP Code to X75.9
754.4			CONGENITAL GENU RECURVATUM AND BOWING OF LONG BONES OF LEG Code to X76.9
754.5			VARUS DEFORMITIES OF FEET Code to X76.9
754.6			VALGUS DEFORMITIES OF FEET Code to X76.9 Code flatfoot to X77
754.7			OTHER DEFORMITIES OF FEET Code to X76.9 Code clubfoot NOS to X78.9
754.8			OTHER SPECIFIED Code to X-code by type and site. See also Section V, Impairments

APPENDIX III

CONT- TENT	NOT USED	NEW CODE	CATEGORY TITLE
			(740-759)--continued
	755		OTHER CONGENITAL ANOMALIES OF LIMBS (755) Code to X-code by type and site. See also Section V, Impairments.
			OTHER CONGENITAL MUSCULOSKELETAL ANOMALIES (756)
	756.0		ANOMALIES OF SKULL AND FACE BONES Code to X-code by type and site. See also Section V, Impairments.
	756.1		ANOMALIES OF SPINE Code to X-code by type and site. See also Section V, Impairments.
	756.2		CERVICAL RIB Code to X-code by type and site. See also Section V, Impairments.
	756.3		OTHER ANOMALIES OF RIBS AND STERNUM Code to X-code by type and site. See also Section V, Impairments.
756.6			ANOMALIES OF DIAPHRAGM <u>Excludes</u> absence of diaphragm (X33.9)
756.8			OTHER SPECIFIED ANOMALIES OF MUSCLE, TENDON, FASCIA AND CONNECTIVE TISSUE For HIS, <u>excludes</u> congenital absence of muscle or tendon. See X33 and X34, Section V, Impairments. <u>Excludes also</u> congenital shortening of tendon; code to X73-X76 or X79, by site. See also Section V, Impairments.
756.9			UNSPECIFIED ANOMALIES OF MUSCULOSKELETAL SYSTEM For HIS, any that are structural deformities will be coded to X-code by type and site. See also Section V, Impairments.

CON-TENT	NOT USED	NEW CODE	CATEGORY TITLE
			(740-759)--continued
			CONGENITAL ANOMALIES OF THE INTEGUMENT (757)
757.6			SPECIFIED ANOMALIES OF BREAST For HIS, <u>excludes</u> absence of nipple (congenital) (X32.9) and congenital absence of breast (X32.9)
			CHROMOSOMAL ANOMALIES (758)
	758.0		DOWN'S SYNDROME Code to X19.9. See also Section V, Impairments.
			OTHER AND UNSPECIFIED CONGENITAL ANOMALIES (759)
	759.7		MULTIPLE CONGENITAL ANOMALIES SO DESCRIBED Code to X99.9. See also Section V, Impairments.
	759.9		CONGENITAL ANOMALY, UNSPECIFIED Code to X99.9. See also Section V, Impairments.

APPENDIX III

CONTENT	NOT USED	NEW CODE	CATEGORY TITLE
			<p>CERTAIN CONDITIONS ORIGINATING IN THE PERINATAL PERIOD (760-779)</p> <p><u>Notes for HIS:</u></p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> 1. Births of well babies are not coded for HIS. Births of well babies with or without routine circumcision, on the Hospital Page, are to be deleted. <p>If an infant stays in the hospital after the mother goes home (more nights in the hospital than mother) and no reason is stated or indicated, the Hospital Stay will be coded as entered.</p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> 2. If an infant has a condition reported as due to a disease or condition in the mother, see ICD, Vol. 2 "Maternal Conditions Affecting Fetus or Newborn" and code as per ICD. <u>DO NOT</u> create a Condition Page for the maternal condition. 3. Infants (or persons of any age) having been injured at birth, or affected before birth, to the extent that they are deformed, or otherwise "impaired," will be classified to the X-code with ".9" for the 4th digit. No additional code is required for the cause of the impairment.
	761.6		<p>FETUS OR NEWBORN AFFECTED BY MATERNAL COMPLICATIONS OF PREGNANCY (761)</p> <p>Maternal death unspecified</p>
767.0			<p>BIRTH TRAUMA (767)</p> <p>SUBDURAL AND CEREBRAL HAEMORRHAGE For HIS, includes infants under 3 months of age reported to be paralyzed at birth. Infants 3+ months of age, code to X64.9.</p>
	768.0		<p>INTRAUTERINE HYPOXIA AND BIRTH ASPHYXIA (768)</p> <p>Fetal death from asphyxia or anoxia before onset of labor or at unspecified time</p>
	768.1		<p>Fetal death from asphyxia or anoxia during labor</p>
			<p>OTHER AND ILL-DEFINED CONDITIONS ORIGINATING IN THE PERINATAL PERIOD (779)</p>
	779.6		<p>Termination of Pregnancy (Fetus) For HIS, termination of pregnancy constituting an abortion, will be classified only as abortion (for the mother).</p>
	779.9		<p>UNSPECIFIED <u>Excludes</u> fetal death of unknown cause.</p>

CON-TENT	NOT USED	NEW CODE	CATEGORY TITLE
			<p>SYMPTOMS, SIGNS AND ILL-DEFINED CONDITIONS (780-799)</p> <p>For HIS, changes have been made in this Section for the purpose of classifying symptoms with onset 3 mos+ to the X-codes for impairments.</p> <p>These changes occur mainly in conditions affecting speech, feeling, taste, smell, coordination and locomotion. Instructions for coding these conditions with onset 3 mos+ will be found in this Appendix and Section V, Impairments.</p> <p>SYMPTOMS (780-789)</p> <p>GENERAL SYMPTOMS (780)</p>
780.3			<p>CONVULSIONS For HIS, code chronic or repeated convulsions, seizures, fits, 3 mos+, to 345.9. See also 345.</p>
780.7			<p>MALAISE AND FATIGUE <u>Includes</u> overwork, overtired, exhaustion, worn out, rundown, weakness of unknown cause or type. If these are due to senility (797) or nerves (300.5), code cause only. <u>Excludes:</u> overexertion NOS (994.5)</p>
780.9			<p>OTHER <u>Includes also</u> loss of memory, "forgetfulness," "can't remember well." If these are due to old age, stroke, arteriosclerosis or other chronic disease, code cause only. If cause is not stated, and person is 65+, code as for senility (797). <u>Includes also</u> pain in side -3 mos; if 3 mos+, code as for Orthopedic Impairment.</p>

APPENDIX III

CONT- ENT	NOT USED	NEW CODE	CATEGORY TITLE
781.0			<p>(780-799)--continued</p> <p>SYMPTOMS INVOLVING NERVOUS AND MUSCULOSKELETAL SYSTEM (781)</p> <p>ABNORMAL INVOLUNTARY MOVEMENTS This category includes symptoms such as athetosis NOS, spasm, twitching, tremor, trembling and abnormal involuntary movements, with part of body and cause not known. <u>Includes also</u> abnormal head movement, cause unknown.</p> <p>If symptoms in this category involve back, limbs, muscles, or trunk, NEC, code as for Trouble of those sites in Short Index.</p> <p>The term "spastic" of unspecified site or with sites involving limbs, back, trunk, 3 mos +, is coded as for Paralysis, partial of those sites. See also Section V, Impairments.</p> <p><u>Excludes:</u> "habit" spasm (any site) (307.2) spasm NEC: eyelid (374.4); face or facial (351.8); of pylorus (537.8); of tongue (529.8)</p> <p>tic (any site) (due to nerves) (307.2)</p> <p>jerks, jerking (myoclonus) (333.2)</p>
781.1			<p>DISTURBANCE OF SENSATION OF SMELL AND TASTE If 3 mos +, code to X12. See also Section V, Impairments.</p>
781.2			<p>ABNORMALITY OF GAIT If 3 mos +, code to Paralysis, partial in the X-code. See also Section V, Impairments. <u>Excludes</u> difficulty walking (719.7). <u>Excludes also:</u> problem terminology such as "staggering" or "stumbling", code as for Trouble, walking.</p>
781.3			<p>LACK OF COORDINATION Code ataxia or muscular incoordination, 3 mos +, to Paralysis, partial in the X-code. See also Section V, Impairments. <u>Excludes</u> loss of balance or equilibrium, dizziness (780.4).</p>
781.4			<p>TRANSIENT PARALYSIS OF LIMB -3 MOS <u>Includes</u> paralysis of <u>one</u> limb of unknown cause. If cause is given, code cause only. <u>Excludes</u> paralysis of one limb (arm or leg) in infants under 3 mos of age--see NOTES--category 760-779, this Appendix.</p>

CONT- TENT	NOT USED	NEW CODE	CATEGORY TITLE
			(780-799)--continued (781)--continued
	781.5		CLUBBING OF FINGERS Code to X74 with appropriate 4th digit etiology code. See also Section V, Impairments.
781.9			OTHER Entries of "poor posture," "bad posture," or other "abnormal" posture given as a condition will be coded to X79 regardless of onset. If a condition is <u>caused by</u> the posture defect, code the condition only.
			SYMPTOMS INVOLVING SKIN AND OTHER INTEGUMENTARY TISSUE (782)
782.0			DISTURBANCE OF SKIN SENSATION If 3 mos+, code to X12. See also Section V, Impairments.
782.2			LOCALIZED SUPERFICIAL SWELLING, MASS OR LUMP <u>Includes</u> "knots," "lumps," and "bumps," of unknown cause and type of external sites. If due to current injury, code to Injury, by site; if no site given, code 959.
			<u>Excludes</u> "knots," "lumps," and "bumps," of unknown cause and type of internal sites; see LUMP or MASS, Vol. 2; if described as "benign," "malignant," or "non-malignant," code as for Neoplasms (140-239).
782.4			JAUNDICE UNSPECIFIED, NOT OF NEWBORN Jaundice of newborn, code 774.6
			SYMPTOMS CONCERNING NUTRITION, METABOLISM AND DEVELOPMENT (783)
	783.1		ABNORMAL WEIGHT GAIN See 278.0 this Appendix.
783.2			ABNORMAL LOSS OF WEIGHT <u>Includes</u> loss of weight, cause not specified. If cause is given, code cause only.

APPENDIX III

CONT- ENT	NOT USED	NEW CODE	CATEGORY TITLE
783.4			<p>(780-799)--continued (783)--continued</p> <p>LACK OF EXPECTED NORMAL PHYSIOLOGICAL DEVELOPMENT <u>Includes</u> underweight, cause not specified. If cause is given, code cause only.</p>
784.0			<p>SYMPTOMS INVOLVING HEAD AND NECK (784)</p>
784.2			<p>HEADACHE</p>
			<p>For HIS, <u>includes</u> tension headache; headache due to "nerves," or "nervousness," or nervous headache.</p>
784.3			<p>SWELLING, MASS OR LUMP IN HEAD AND NECK</p>
			<p>For HIS, <u>includes also</u>, <u>internal</u> "knots," "lumps," and "bumps" of head and neck. If these are due to a current injury, code to Injury, by site. If described as "benign," "malignant", or "non-malignant" code as for Neoplasms (140-239)</p>
784.4			<p>APHASIA</p>
			<p>If 3 mos +, code to X11. See this Appendix and Vol. 2 for specified types of aphasia. See also Section V, Impairments.</p>
784.5			<p>VOICE DISTURBANCE</p>
			<p>Code listed conditions, 3 mos + to X11. See also Section V, Impairments.</p>
784.6			<p>OTHER SPEECH DISTURBANCE</p>
			<p>Code listed conditions 3 mos + to X11. See also Section V, Impairments.</p>
784.7			<p>OTHER SYMBOLIC DYSFUNCTION</p>
			<p>Code agnosia NEC, agraphia and apraxia, 3 mos + to X11. See also Vol. 2 and Section V, Impairments. Code acalculia and dyslexia, 3 mos + to X14. See also Vol. 2 and Section V, Impairments.</p>

CONTENT	NOT USED	NEW CODE	CATEGORY TITLE
			(780-799)--continued SYMPTOMS INVOLVING CARDIOVASCULAR SYSTEM (785)
785.0			TACHYCARDIA, UNSPECIFIED This code will not be used if a more specific type of tachycardia is given or a heart condition in 414-429 is linked with or given as the cause of tachycardia. If due to a known cause other than 414-429, code the cause only.
785.1			PALPITATIONS This code will not be used if a more specific heart condition in 414-429 is linked with or given as the cause; code 414-429 only.
785.2			FUNCTIONAL AND UNDIAGNOSED CARDIAC MURMURS This code will not be used if a more specific type or site is given. If conditions in 390-398, or 424 are linked with or given as the cause, code 390-398 or 424 only.
785.5			SHOCK WITHOUT MENTION OF TRAUMA If physical state of shock is reported with current injury, code the injury only. <u>Excludes</u> nervous, mental, or emotional shock (308); and paralytic shock or stroke (437.9)
			SYMPTOMS INVOLVING RESPIRATORY SYSTEM AND OTHER CHEST SYMPTOMS (786)
786.6			SWELLING, MASS OR LUMP IN CHEST For HIS, <u>includes also</u> "knots," "lumps," and "bumps" of <u>internal</u> chest area, except breast (611.7). If these are due to current injury, code to Injury, chest. If these are described as "benign," "malignant," or "non-malignant"; code as for Neoplasms (140-239).

APPENDIX III

CON-TENT	NOT USED	NEW CODE	CATEGORY TITLE
			(780-799)--continued
789.1			<p>SYMPTOMS INVOLVING ABDOMEN AND PELVIS (789)</p> <p>HEPATOMEGLY <u>Excludes</u> hypertrophy of liver STATED to be acute.</p>
789.3			<p>ABDOMINAL OR PELVIC SWELLING, MASS OR LUMP For HIS, <u>includes</u> "knots" and "bumps" of internal abdominal or pelvic areas. If these are due to current injury NEC, code to Injury, by site. If these are described as "benign," "malignant," or "non-malignant"; code as for Neoplasms (140-239).</p>
			<p>RADIOLOGICAL AND OTHER EXAMINATIONS OF BODY STRUCTURE (793)</p> <p>For HIS, this category will be used for conditions of: X-rays, thermography and ultrasound examinations WITHOUT a specified condition.</p>
793.0			Skull and head
793.1			Lungs
793.2			Other intrathoracic organ
793.3			Biliary tract
793.4			Gastrointestinal tract
793.5			Genitourinary organs
793.6			Abdominal area, including retroperitoneum
793.7			Musculoskeletal system
793.8			Breast
793.9			Other

CONTENT	NOT USED	NEW CODE	CATEGORY TITLE
797			<p>(780-799)--continued</p> <p>ILL-DEFINED AND UNKNOWN CAUSES OF MORBIDITY AND MORTALITY (797-799)</p> <p>SENIILITY WITHOUT MENTION OF PSYCHOSIS</p> <p><u>Includes</u> "old age" in persons 65+ with symptoms such as debility, weakness, trembling and loss of memory.</p> <p><u>Excludes</u> the following:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> mental or nervous disorders or trouble due to senility or "old age" (290.9) depression due to senility or "old age" (290.2) conditions of the heart, stomach (body parts and organs); code to the specified condition only "Age" or "old age" causing impairments in the X-codes; code "X" for etiology. Do not code 797 separately.
798			<p>SUDDEN DEATH, CAUSE UNKNOWN</p> <p>Not applicable.</p> <p>OTHER ILL-DEFINED AND UNKNOWN CAUSES OF MORBIDITY AND MORTALITY (799)</p>
799.2			<p>NERVOUSNESS</p> <p>Do not use this category if any in 290-316 has been coded for the same person.</p> <p>For HIS, <u>includes</u> "bad nerves," "jitters," "worry," "nervous trouble," "nervous condition," "nervous disorder," and "nervous tension" of unknown cause or type.</p> <p><u>Excludes</u> such conditions as:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> nervous breakdown (300.9) nervous or mental condition <u>except psychosis</u> (non-psychotic) when due to or associated with physical disorders, see category 316, this Appendix.

APPENDIX III

CONT- ENT	NOT USED	NEW CODE	CATEGORY TITLE
799.8		799.5	<p>(780-799)--continued</p> <p>(799)--continued</p> <p>OBSERVATION WITH NO CONDITION FOUND Use this code <u>only</u> when it is known that the specified condition being treated or observed was NOT found. If a condition was found, code it, not 799.5.</p> <p>If the condition is mentioned, but there is no mention of what was found, code the condition, not 799.5.</p> <p>OTHER ILL-DEFINED CONDITIONS Use this code if some disease process is stated, such as fibrosis NOS, but the site or type is not mentioned, and the indexing shows no code for unspecified site or type.</p>
799.9			<p>OTHER UNKNOWN AND UNSPECIFIED CAUSE Use this code when an illness must be coded, but the disease process is not stated and there is not enough information to tell what the condition is.</p>

CON-TENT	NOT USED	NEW CODE	CATEGORY TITLE
			<p>INJURY AND POISONINGS (800-999)</p> <p><u>General Notes:</u></p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> 1. For HIS, the codes E800-E999 (External Cause) will be used beginning with data year 1993. 2. Adverse effects of drugs, poisonings and chemicals will be coded to FOUR categories only: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> "Overdose" or "poisoning" of drugs 977.9 Toxic effects of venom 989.5 Adverse effects of chemical substances 989.9 Adverse effects of drugs 995.2 3. In these notes, the term "injury" will refer to types in 800-959. 4. For HIS, ICD 4th digits for 800-904, 910-959 will NOT be used. 5. Present effects 3 mos + that are NOT impairments will be coded to the ICD condition code as indexed by ICD or in the Short Index. Present effects 3 mos + that ARE impairments will be coded as impairments only. <u>No code in 800-999 is required.</u> 6. Injuries in 800-959, 3 mos +, <u>with no specified present effects</u> will be coded as for Late Effects. See Vol. 2, Late Effects of specified type of injury.

APPENDIX III

CONT- TENT	NOT USED	NEW CODE	CATEGORY TITLE
	4th digits		<p>(800-999)--continued</p> <p>FRACTURES (800-829)</p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> 1. <u>See also</u> General Notes for 800-999, this Appendix. 2. As per ICD, fracture due to specified disease: code disease only. Fracture due to unspecified disease, and NOT due to injury, will be coded to 733.1 only. 3. For HIS, fracture includes "broken," or "cracked," if it is clear that one or more bones are involved. 4. For fractures in 800-829, 3 mos +, with no present effect indicated except delayed healing or nonunion, code to 905.0 - 905.5.
806			<p>FRACTURE OF VERTEBRAL COLUMN WITH SPINAL CORD LESION</p> <p>For HIS, <u>excludes</u> all types of paralysis, <u>3 mos +</u>, due to injury; code these to X-code with .0 in 4th digit. See also Section V, Impairments.</p>
825			<p>FRACTURE OF ONE OR MORE TARSAL AND METATARSAL BONES</p> <p>For HIS, <u>includes</u> "broken arches," -3 mos, if due to injury.</p> <p><u>Excludes</u> "broken arches," 3 mos +, code to X77. See also Section V, Impairments.</p>

CONTENT	NOT USED	NEW CODE	CATEGORY TITLE
	4th digits		<p>(800-999)--continued</p> <p>DISLOCATION (830-839)</p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> 1. <u>See also</u> General Notes for 800-999, this Appendix. 2. For HIS, dislocations or displacements codable to 830-839 are limited to those due to injury in past 3 months. 3. For "disc" conditions, <u>see</u> 839, this Appendix. 4. For HIS, congenital dislocation of hip will be coded to X75.9 and any other specified <u>congenital</u> dislocation will be coded to X70.9-X79.9, by site. See also Section V, Impairments. 5. Dislocation, jaw, 3 mos +, code to X92. See also Section V, Impairments. 6. Dislocation (and synonyms) of joints of limbs, back, trunk, 3 mos +, (or old or habitual or recurrent), with no other specified present effect, will be coded to X80-X89, by site, according to the rules for X80-X89. See also Section V, Impairments. <p>"Rupture", "tear", "broken", "wrenched", "derangement", of ligaments, muscles, cartilages, or tendons or other structures surrounding the knee or other joints, will be coded as for Sprain, strain of those sites unless <u>dislocation</u> is also specified in the description.</p>
839			<p>OTHER, MULTIPLE, AND ILL-DEFINED DISLOCATIONS</p> <p>For HIS, <u>includes</u> dislocation, displacement, and other "disc" conditions, -3 mos, if <u>specified</u> as due to injury.</p> <p><u>Excludes</u> "disc" conditions, -3 mos, <u>NOT</u> due to injury, and all "disc" conditions 3 mos +, code 722, by site.</p>